



owner.ford.com (U.S.)



ford.ca (Canada)

August 2019  
First Printing  
Litho in U.S.A.



LPHJ19A321 AA



2020 FORD GT OWNER'S MANUAL



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2019

All rights reserved.

Part Number: 201908 20190808025833

## California Proposition 65



**WARNING:** Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to [www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle](http://www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle).



**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm.  
**Wash your hands after handling.**



# Table of Contents

---

## Introduction

About This Manual .....	5
Symbols Glossary .....	5
Data Recording .....	7
Perchlorate .....	10
Replacement Parts Recommendation .....	11
Special Notices .....	11
Mobile Communications Equipment .....	12
Ford Performance .....	13

## Environment

Protecting the Environment .....	15
----------------------------------	----

## At a Glance

Instrument Panel .....	16
Unique Features .....	17

## Child Safety

General Information .....	19
Installing Child Restraints .....	20
Booster Seats .....	24
Child Restraint Positioning .....	26

## Seatbelts

Principle of Operation .....	28
Fastening the Seatbelts .....	29
Seatbelt Warning Lamp and Indicator Chime .....	31
Seatbelt Reminder .....	32
Child Restraint and Seatbelt Maintenance .....	33
Seatbelt Extensions .....	34

## Personal Safety System™

Personal Safety System™ .....	35
-------------------------------	----

## Supplementary Restraints System

Principle of Operation .....	36
Driver and Passenger Airbags .....	37
Front Passenger Sensing System .....	38
Side Airbags .....	40
Driver and Passenger Knee Airbags .....	41
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator .....	41
Airbag Disposal .....	42

## 911 Assist

What Is 911 Assist .....	43
Emergency Call Requirements .....	43
Emergency Call Limitations .....	44

## Keys and Remote Controls

General Information on Radio Frequencies .....	45
Remote Control .....	46
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control .....	49

## Doors and Locks

Locking and Unlocking .....	50
Opening the Doors .....	52
Emergency Door Release .....	53

## Security

Passive Anti-Theft System .....	54
Anti-Theft Alarm .....	55

## Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel .....	56
Audio Control .....	57
Voice Control .....	57
Cruise Control .....	57
Information Display Control .....	58
Horn .....	58
Drive Mode Control .....	58
Wiper and Washer Control .....	58

# Table of Contents

---

Lighting Control .....	58
------------------------	----

## **Adjustable Pedals**

Adjusting the Pedals .....	60
----------------------------	----

## **Wipers and Washers**

Windshield Wipers .....	61
-------------------------	----

Windshield Washers .....	61
--------------------------	----

## **Lighting**

General Information .....	62
---------------------------	----

Lighting Control .....	62
------------------------	----

Autolamps .....	63
-----------------	----

Instrument Lighting Dimmer .....	63
----------------------------------	----

Daytime Running Lamps .....	63
-----------------------------	----

Direction Indicators .....	64
----------------------------	----

Interior Lamps .....	64
----------------------	----

## **Windows and Mirrors**

Power Windows .....	65
---------------------	----

Global Opening .....	65
----------------------	----

Exterior Mirrors .....	66
------------------------	----

Interior Mirror .....	66
-----------------------	----

## **Instrument Cluster**

Gauges .....	67
--------------	----

Warning Lamps and Indicators .....	69
------------------------------------	----

Audible Warnings and Indicators .....	73
---------------------------------------	----

## **Information Displays**

General Information .....	74
---------------------------	----

Information Messages .....	77
----------------------------	----

## **Climate Control**

Automatic Climate Control .....	84
---------------------------------	----

Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate .....	85
---	----

Cabin Air Filter .....	86
------------------------	----

## **Seats**

Sitting in the Correct Position .....	87
---------------------------------------	----

Manual Seats .....	87
--------------------	----

## **Auxiliary Power Points**

Auxiliary Power Points .....	89
------------------------------	----

## **Storage Compartments**

Cup Holders .....	90
-------------------	----

Map Pockets .....	90
-------------------	----

Under Seat Storage .....	90
--------------------------	----

## **Starting and Stopping the Engine**

General Information .....	91
---------------------------	----

Keyless Starting .....	91
------------------------	----

Steering Wheel Lock .....	92
---------------------------	----

Starting the Engine .....	92
---------------------------	----

## **Fuel and Refueling**

Safety Precautions .....	95
--------------------------	----

Fuel Quality .....	96
--------------------	----

Fuel Filler Funnel Location .....	96
-----------------------------------	----

Running Out of Fuel .....	96
---------------------------	----

Refueling .....	98
-----------------	----

Fuel Consumption .....	99
------------------------	----

## **Engine Emission Control**

Emission Law .....	101
--------------------	-----

Catalytic Converter .....	102
---------------------------	-----

## **Transmission**

Automatic Transmission .....	105
------------------------------	-----

## **Brakes**

General Information .....	110
---------------------------	-----

Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes .....	111
--	-----

Electric Parking Brake .....	111
------------------------------	-----

# Table of Contents

Hill Start Assist .....	113
-------------------------	-----

## Stability Control

Principle of Operation .....	115
Using Stability Control .....	116

## Parking Aids

Rear View Camera .....	118
------------------------	-----

## Cruise Control

Principle of Operation .....	120
Using Cruise Control .....	120

## Driving Aids

Steering .....	121
Drive Mode Control .....	121

## Load Carrying

Rear Under Hatch Storage .....	127
Load Limit .....	127

## Towing

Towing a Trailer .....	132
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels .....	132

## Driving Hints

Breaking-In .....	133
Driving Through Water .....	133
Floor Mats .....	134

## Roadside Emergencies

Roadside Assistance .....	135
Hazard Flashers .....	135
Fuel Shutoff .....	135
Jump Starting the Vehicle .....	136
Post-Crash Alert System .....	137
Transporting the Vehicle .....	137
Towing Points .....	138

## Customer Assistance

Getting the Services You Need .....	139
In California (U.S. Only) .....	140
The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program (U.S. Only) .....	140
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program (Canada Only) .....	141
Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and Canada .....	142
Ordering Additional Owner's Literature .....	143
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only) .....	143
Reporting Safety Defects (Canada Only) .....	144

## Fuses

Fuse Specification Chart .....	145
Changing a Fuse .....	155

## Maintenance

General Information .....	157
Opening and Closing the Hood .....	157
Under Hood Overview .....	159
Engine Oil Dipstick .....	160
Engine Oil Check .....	160
Engine Coolant Check .....	161
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check .....	165
Brake Fluid Check .....	166
Power Steering Fluid Check .....	166
Washer Fluid Check .....	167
Fuel Filter .....	167
Changing the 12V Battery .....	167
Checking the Wiper Blades .....	169
Changing the Wiper Blades .....	170
Adjusting the Headlamps .....	170
Changing a Bulb .....	171
Changing the Engine Air Filter .....	171

# Table of Contents

---

## Track Use

Track Use .....	172
-----------------	-----

## Launch Control

What Is Launch Control .....	174
Using Launch Control .....	174

## Vehicle Care

General Information .....	175
Cleaning Products .....	175
Cleaning the Exterior .....	175
Waxing .....	177
Cleaning the Engine .....	177
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades .....	178
Cleaning the Interior .....	178
Cleaning the Instrument Panel and Instrument Cluster Lens .....	179
Cleaning Leather Seats .....	180
Repairing Minor Paint Damage .....	180
Cleaning the Wheels .....	180
Vehicle Storage .....	181
Body Styling Kits .....	182

## Wheels and Tires

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit .....	183
Tire Care .....	189
Using Summer Tires .....	201
Using Snow Chains .....	201
Tire Pressure Monitoring System .....	202
Changing a Road Wheel .....	205
Driving at High Speed .....	205
Technical Specifications .....	206

## Capacities and Specifications

Engine Specifications .....	207
Motorcraft Parts .....	208
Vehicle Dimensions .....	209
Vehicle Identification Number .....	210

Vehicle Certification Label .....	211
Transmission Code Designation .....	211
Capacities and Specifications .....	212

## Audio System

Audio Unit .....	218
USB Port .....	218

## SYNC™ 3

General Information .....	219
Using Voice Recognition .....	221
Entertainment .....	228
Phone .....	238
Navigation .....	240
Apps .....	245
Settings .....	247
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting .....	249

## Accessories

Accessories .....	262
-------------------	-----

## Scheduled Maintenance

General Maintenance Information .....	263
Normal Scheduled Maintenance .....	264
Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance .....	266
Scheduled Maintenance Record .....	266

## Appendices

End User License Agreement .....	277
Declaration of Conformity .....	302
Declaration of Conformity - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 .....	302

# Introduction

## ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford Performance. If you have owned a Ford Performance vehicle before, welcome back. If this is your first Ford Performance vehicle, welcome to the family. We are confident that our dedication to performance, quality, craftsmanship and customer service will provide you with many miles of exhilarating, safe and comfortable driving.

We strive to build engaging vehicles that involve the driver in every aspect of the driving experience. Although performance is at the heart of every Ford Performance vehicle, we go further. Our goal is to deliver a comprehensive, complete vehicle, paying close attention to the smallest details such as the sound of the exhaust, the quality of the interior materials and the functionality and the comfort of the seats, to make sure that you enjoy not only exceptional performance but an outstanding driving environment as well. In this vehicle, we express this philosophy through the use of lightweight materials, a sophisticated powertrain and outstanding chassis dynamics and aerodynamics.

This manual provides information specific to your Ford GT. By referring to this manual, you can identify those features, controls and specifications unique to your new Ford GT.

To assist you with any questions or concerns regarding your vehicle, we established the Ford GT Concierge. Contact your Ford GT Concierge at the number listed if you need assistance.

## Ford GT Concierge Phone Numbers

Market	Phone number
Austria	0800-802632
Belgium	0800-795-45
Canada	1-800-210-5795
France	0805-080272
Germany	0800-182-4992
Ireland	1-800-901-591
Italy	800-789-771
Mexico	1-800-210-5795
Netherlands	0-800-022-2286
Saudi Arabia	800-844-7834
Spain	900-839249
Sweden	020-889-877
Switzerland	0800-890-079
United Arab Emirates	8000-35703061
United Kingdom	0800-014-8400
United States	1-800-210-5795

All other countries should use 001-313-427-8617.

**Note:** Please be advised that international calls may be subject to carrier fees.

## SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.



Anti-lock braking system



# Introduction



Battery



Brake system



Carbon Ceramic Brakes



Cruise control



Damper Control Mode



Direction Indicator



Door Ajar



Engine coolant temperature



Engine oil



Fasten seatbelt



Front airbag



Front Lift Mode Active



Frost Warning Lamp



Hatch Ajar



High Beam



Hood Ajar



Hydraulic System Fault



Launch Control



Low Beam Malfunction Warning Lamp



Low Fuel Level



Low tire pressure warning



Parking Lamps



Powertrain Fault



Rear Fog Lamp



Ride Height System Fault



Service engine soon



Stability control



Stability control Off



Transmission Fault

# Introduction

## DATA RECORDING



**WARNING:** Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the regional Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

**Note:** *Error logs are reset following a service or repair.*

**Note:** *We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.*

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.
- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

## Service Data

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company (Ford of Canada in Canada), and service and repair facilities may access or share among them vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. Additionally, Ford Motor Company (Ford of Canada, in Canada) may, where permitted by law, use vehicle diagnostic information for vehicle improvement or with other information we may have about you, (for example, your contact information), to offer you products or services that may interest you. Data may

# Introduction

---

be provided to our service providers such as part suppliers that may help diagnose malfunctions, and who are similarly obligated to protect data. We retain this data only as long as necessary to perform these functions or to comply with law. We may provide information where required in response to official requests to law enforcement or other government authorities or third parties acting with lawful authority or court order, and such information may be used in legal proceedings. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use connected apps and services, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used to provide services to you, personalizing your experience, troubleshoot, and to improve products and services and offer you products and services that may interest you, where permitted by law. For Canada only, for more information, please review the Ford of Canada privacy policy at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca), including our U.S. data storage and use of service providers in other jurisdictions who may be subject to legal requirements in Canada, the United States and other countries applicable to them, for example, lawful requirements to disclose personal information to governmental authorities in those countries.

## Event Data

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal; and
- How fast the vehicle was traveling; and
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

**Note:** *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

# Introduction

---

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

## Comfort, Convenience and Entertainment Data

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe. See **Settings** (page 247).

### Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

### Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

## Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data

to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

## Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

## Vehicles With a Modem

The modem has a SIM. The modem periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification.

**Note:** *The modem continues to send this information unless you have all added value services deactivated. Contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center. Refer to the regional Ford website for contact information.*

**Note:** *The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.*

# Introduction

---

## Vehicles With SYNC

### Mobile Device Data

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **Apps** (page 245).

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the master reset function to erase the stored information. See **Settings** (page 247).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, see the regional Ford website.

### Vehicles With an Emergency Call System

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

**Note:** *You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.*

### PERCHLORATE

Certain components in your vehicle such as airbag modules, seatbelt pretensioners and remote control batteries may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal.

# Introduction

**For more information visit:**

Web Address
<a href="http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate">www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate</a>

## REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

### Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

### Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

## Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

## SPECIAL NOTICES

### New Vehicle Limited Warranty

For a detailed description of what is covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty, see your warranty guide that is available online. For more information, refer to our website and download your copy of the warranty guide.

### Additional Warranty Information

Your vehicle's warranty information is covered in its entirety in the Ford GT Warranty Guide. You can obtain warranty service for your vehicle at a certified Ford GT Service dealer. If you need assistance locating an authorized dealer, please contact your Ford GT Concierge at **1-800-210-5795**.

We design and build our vehicles for our customers to drive as delivered from the factory. The Ford GT Warranty Guide discusses vehicle use and the installation of aftermarket parts and their effect on warranty coverage. See the Ford GT Warranty Guide for complete information.

# Introduction

## Special Instructions



**WARNING:** You risk death or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol. Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.

## On Board Diagnostics Data Link Connector



**WARNING:** Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

Your vehicle has an OBD Data Link Connector (DLC) that is used in conjunction with a diagnostic scan tool for vehicle diagnostics, repairs and reprogramming services. Installing an aftermarket device that uses the DLC during normal driving for purposes such as remote insurance company monitoring, transmission of vehicle data to other devices or entities, or altering the performance of the vehicle, may cause

interference with or even damage to vehicle systems. We do not recommend or endorse the use of aftermarket plug-in devices unless approved by Ford. The vehicle Warranty will not cover damage caused by an aftermarket plug-in device.

## Certified Ford GT Service Dealer

All occurrences of authorized dealer in this manual are references to dealers who are certified to work on the Ford GT. Not all dealers have this certification. To locate a certified Ford GT Service dealer, contact your Ford GT Concierge at 1-800-210-5795.

## MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be

# Introduction

---

paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

## **FORD PERFORMANCE**

Welcome to the Ford Performance family!

Performance and racing are deeply embedded in Ford's DNA, dating back to October 10, 1901 when Henry Ford won his first race against Alexander Winton, America's greatest racer at the time. Henry Ford founded Ford Motor Company 18 months later with capital raised on the back of this remarkable upset victory.

Today, that spirit of passion, innovation and performance lives on through Ford Performance. Established in 2015, the company's performance teams -- Ford Special Vehicle Team (United States), Team RS (Europe), Ford Performance (Australia) and Ford Racing (United States) – have unified under the mission to create the world's leading performance vehicles, parts, accessories and experiences for enthusiasts. This includes accelerating the development of advanced aerodynamics, lightweighting, electronics, powertrain performance, fuel efficiency and other technologies that can be applied across Ford's product portfolio.

We are proud and passionate about what we do and we look forward to a long and exciting relationship with you. Thank you for choosing Ford Performance!



# Introduction

---



# Environment

---

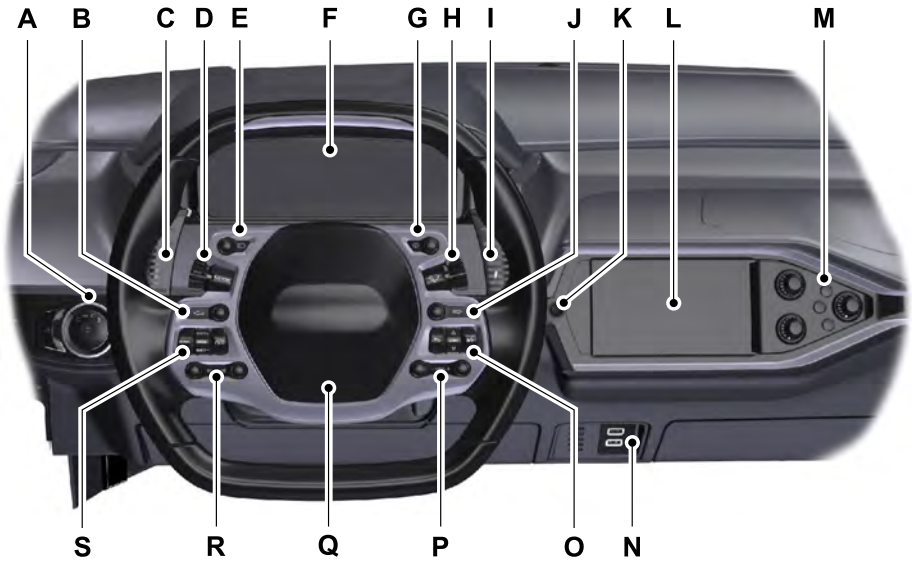
## **PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT**

You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit [www.sustainability.ford.com](http://www.sustainability.ford.com).

# At a Glance

## INSTRUMENT PANEL



E243664

- A Lighting control. See **Lighting Control** (page 62).
- B Left direction indicator. See **Direction Indicators** (page 64).
- C Left paddle shifter. See **Automatic Transmission** (page 105).
- D Drive mode control. See **Drive Mode Control** (page 121).
- E High beam switch. See **Lighting Control** (page 62).
- F Instrument cluster. See **Gauges** (page 67).
- G Windshield washers. See **Windshield Washers** (page 61).
- H Windshield wipers. See **Windshield Wipers** (page 61).
- I Right paddle shifter. See **Automatic Transmission** (page 105).
- J Right direction indicator. See **Direction Indicators** (page 64).
- K Audio on and off button. See **Audio Unit** (page 218).
- L SYNC 3. See **General Information** (page 219).
- M Climate controls. See **Automatic Climate Control** (page 84).

# At a Glance

---

- N Media hub. See **USB Port** (page 218).
- O Menu and voice control. See **Voice Control** (page 57).
- P Audio control. See **Audio Control** (page 57).
- Q Horn.
- R Audio control. See **Audio Control** (page 57).
- S Cruise control. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 120).

## UNIQUE FEATURES



E236793

### Vehicle Structure

- Carbon fiber tub and body shell.
- Aluminum structure fore and aft of tub.
- Steel roll cage integrated into the tub.

### Powertrain

- Mid-engine 3.5L Twin Turbo EcoBoost V6.
- 7-speed dual clutch automated manual transmission.

### Chassis

- Electronic/hydraulic controlled torsion bar front and rear suspension systems with ride height varied depending on drive mode.
- Front end lift feature for driveway approaches and speed bumps.
- Independent front and rear suspension with unequal length upper and lower control arms.
- Carbon ceramic brake discs.
- Brembo 6-piston front and 4-piston rear calipers.
- 20 in. x 8.5 in. forged alloy front wheels with 245/35R20 Michelin Pilot Sport Cup 2 tires.

# At a Glance

---

- 20 in. x 11.5 in. forged alloy rear wheels with 325/30R20 Michelin Pilot Sport Cup 2 tires.
- Carbon fiber wheels available as an option.

## **Electronics and Vehicle Controls**

- Vehicle drive mode control with five settings.
- Full LCD instrument cluster with customer selectable features.
- Race inspired steering wheel with stalkless steering column.
- Paddle shifters.
- SYNC 3 including navigation system.
- Single zone automatic temperature control.
- ABS, ESC (electronic stability control) and launch control.
- Passive entry/passive start key system.

## **Exterior**

- Carbon fiber body panels including undertrays.
- Active aerodynamic rear wing and front splitter.
- LED headlamps and tail lamps.

## **Interior**

- Fixed seating positions.
- Independently adjustable steering column and pedals.
- Carbon fiber, leather, and Alcantara interior surfaces.

# Child Safety

## GENERAL INFORMATION

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children.



**WARNING:** Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



**WARNING:** All children are shaped differently. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and other safety organizations, base their recommendations for child restraints on probable child height, age and weight thresholds, or on the minimum requirements of the law. We recommend that you check with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician

(CPST) to make sure that you properly install the child restraint in your vehicle and that you consult your pediatrician to make sure you have a child restraint appropriate for your child. To locate a child restraint fitting station and CPST, contact NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or go to [www.nhtsa.dot.gov](http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov). In Canada, contact Transport Canada toll free at 1-800-333-0371 or go to [www.tc.gc.ca](http://www.tc.gc.ca) to find a Child Car Seat Clinic in your area. Failure to properly restrain children in child restraints made especially for their height, age and weight, may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



**WARNING:** On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

# Child Safety

## Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children

Child	Child Size, Height, Weight, or Age	Recommended Restraint Type
Infants or toddlers	Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).	Use a child restraint (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).
Small children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child restraint (generally children who are less than 57 in (1.45 m) tall, are greater than age four and less than age 12, and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer).	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Larger children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 57 in (1.45 m) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer).	Use a vehicle seatbelt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seat backrest upright.

- You are required by law to properly use child restraints for infants and toddlers in the United States and Canada.
- Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 57 in (1.45 m) tall, or 80 pounds (36 kilograms). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements about the safety of children in your vehicle.

## INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

### Child Seats



E142594

# Child Safety

Use a child restraint (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat) for infants, toddlers, or children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).

## Using Lap and Shoulder Belts



**WARNING:** NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.



**WARNING:** Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, make sure occupants only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

When installing a child restraint with combination lap and shoulder belts:

- Use the correct seatbelt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure that you securely fasten the tongue in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the child restraint, with the tongue between the child restraint and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.

- Place the vehicle seat in the upright position before you install the child restraint.
- Put the seatbelt in the automatic locking mode. See Step 5. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.

Perform the following steps when installing the child restraint with combination lap and shoulder belts:

**Note:** *Although the child restraint illustrated is a forward facing child restraint, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child restraint.*



E142528

1. Position the child restraint in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.



E142529



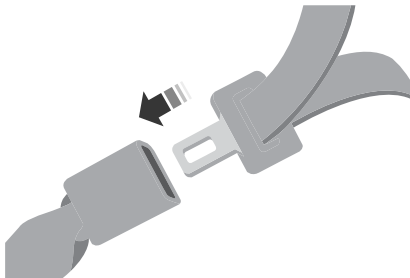
# Child Safety

2. Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together.



E142530

3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. Make sure that you did not twist the belt webbing.



E142531

4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.



E142875

5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until you pull the entire belt out.

**Note:** *The automatic locking mode is available on the front passenger seat. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.*

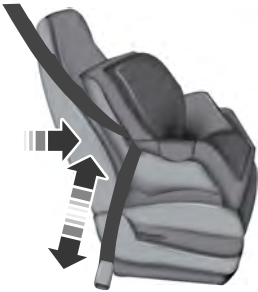
6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt clicks as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.
7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode. You should not be able to pull more belt out. If the retractor did not lock, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.



E142533

# Child Safety

- Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, for example, by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that exists once you add the extra weight of the child to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child restraint to your vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean toward the buckle will additionally help to remove remaining slack from the belt.
- If the child restraint has a tether strap, attach it.



E142534

- Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 1 in (2.5 cm) of movement for proper installation.

We recommend checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with Transport Canada for referral to a Child Car Seat Clinic.

## Using Tether Straps

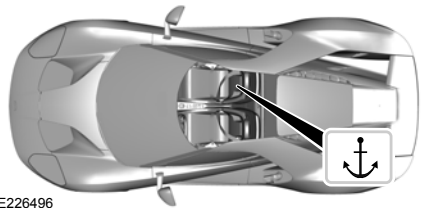


Many forward-facing child restraints include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child restraint and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older child restraints.

Contact the manufacturer of your child restraint for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your child restraint does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in your vehicle.

Once you install the child restraint using the seatbelt, you can attach the top tether strap.

The tether strap anchor in your vehicle is in the following position (shown from top view):



E226496

Perform the following steps to install a child restraint with tether anchors:

# Child Safety

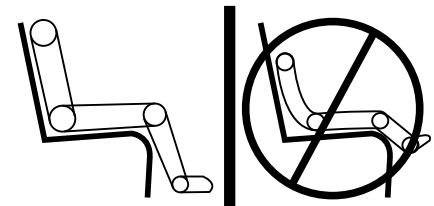
## BOOSTER SEATS



**WARNING:** Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

Use a belt-positioning booster seat for children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety restraint (generally children who are less than 57 in (1.45 m) tall, are greater than age 4 and less than age 12, and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer). Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 57 in (1.45 m) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions when seated without a booster seat:



E142595



E225883

1. Route the tether strap through either opening in the seat backrest as shown.
2. Locate the anchor behind the passenger seat on the floor.
3. Clip the tether strap to the anchor.
4. Tighten the child restraint tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions. If your child restraint system has a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, we also recommend its use.

If the child restraint is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

# Child Safety

- Can the child sit all the way back against their vehicle seat backrest with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?
- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

Always use booster seats in conjunction with your vehicle lap and shoulder belt.

## Types of Booster Seats



E68924

- Backless booster seats

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield. If a vehicle seating position has a low seat backrest or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (as measured at the tops of the ears)

above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat backrest or head restraint and lap and shoulder belts, or consider using a high back booster seat.



E70710

- High back booster seats

If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The following drawings compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.

# Child Safety



E142596



E142597

If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat upon which it is being used, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not introduce any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

## CHILD RESTRAINT POSITIONING



**WARNING:** NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.



**WARNING:** Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow

# Child Safety

the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by your vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.



**WARNING:** Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height.



**WARNING:** Always restrain an unoccupied child seat or booster seat. They may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.



**WARNING:** Do not put the seatbelt under your child's arm or behind its back.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## Recommendations for attaching child safety restraints for children

Restraint Type	Combined weight of child and child restraint	Use any attachment method as indicated below by X	
		Seatbelt and top tether anchor	Seatbelt only
Forward facing child restraint	Up to 65 lb (29.5 kg)	<b>X</b>	
Forward facing child restraint	Over 65 lb (29.5 kg)	<b>X</b>	

**Note:** *The child restraint must rest tightly against the vehicle seat upon which it is installed.*

# Seatbelts

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION



**WARNING:** Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.



**WARNING:** Children must always be properly restrained.



**WARNING:** Do not allow a passenger to hold a child on their lap when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



**WARNING:** All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.



**WARNING:** Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific seatbelt assembly made up of one buckle and one tongue designed to be used as a pair. Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. Never use a single seatbelt for more than one person.



**WARNING:** Seatbelts and seats may be hot in a vehicle that is in the sunshine. The hot seatbelts or seats may burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

All seating positions in your vehicle have lap and shoulder seatbelts. All occupants of the vehicle should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.

The seatbelt system consists of:

- Lap and shoulder seatbelts.
- Seatbelt pretensioner at the front outermost seating positions.
- Belt tension sensor at the front outermost passenger seating position.



• Seatbelt warning light and chime.



• Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator.

# Seatbelts

The seatbelt pretensioners at the front seating positions are designed to tighten the seatbelts when activated. In frontal and near-frontal crashes, the seatbelt pretensioners may be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags.

## FASTENING THE SEATBELTS

The safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts.

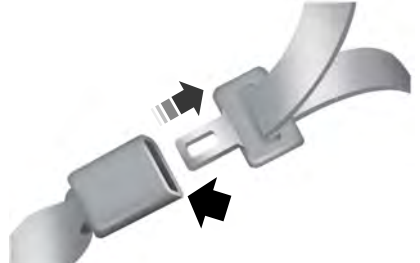


E224747



E142587

1. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle, the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from, until you hear a click and feel it latch. Make sure you securely fasten the tongue in the buckle.

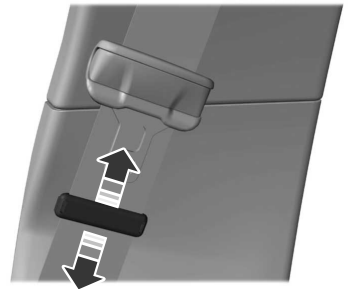


E142588

2. To unfasten, press the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.

### Using the Sliding Clip (If Equipped)

**Note:** The illustration shown is for reference only, actual vehicle may vary.



E200788

Slide the clip away from the tongue so there is no loose webbing when an occupant or child seat is buckled up. You can also use the sliding clip to raise the tongue and prevent it from rattling or to ease access to the tongue.

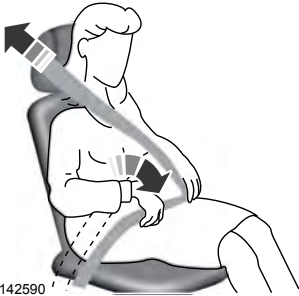


# Seatbelts

## Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy



**WARNING:** Always ride and drive with your seatback upright and properly fasten your seatbelt. Fit the lap portion of the seatbelt snugly and low across the hips. Position the shoulder portion of the seatbelt across your chest. Pregnant women must follow this practice. See the following figure.



E142590

Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. Position the lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort allows. Position the shoulder belt to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

## Seatbelt Locking Modes



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is involved in a crash, have the seatbelts and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

All safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts and have vehicle sensitive locking mode. In addition, the front outboard passenger seatbelts have the automatic locking mode.

### Vehicle Sensitive Mode

This is the normal retractor mode, which allows free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of about 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination seatbelts lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passenger.

In addition, the retractor is designed to lock if you pull the webbing out too quickly. If the seatbelt retractor locks, slowly lower the height adjuster to allow the seatbelt to retract. If the retractor does not unlock, pull the seatbelt out slowly then feed a small length of webbing back toward the stowed position.

### Automatic Locking Mode

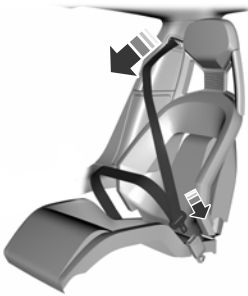
In this mode, the shoulder belt automatically pre-locks. The belt still retracts to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver seatbelt.

### When to Use the Automatic Locking Mode

Use this mode any time a child safety seat, except a booster, is installed in the passenger front seating position. See **Child Safety** (page 19).

# Seatbelts

## How to Use the Automatic Locking Mode



E243129

1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until you pull the entire belt out.

3. Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the seatbelt is now in the automatic locking mode.

## How to Disengage the Automatic Locking Mode

Unbuckle the combination lap and shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

## SEATBELT WARNING LAMP AND INDICATOR CHIME



This lamp illuminates and an indicator chime will sound if the driver seatbelt has not been fastened when the vehicle's ignition is turned on.

## Conditions of operation

If	Then
The driver seatbelt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The seatbelt warning lamp illuminates and the indicator chime sounds for a few seconds.
The driver seatbelt is buckled while the warning lamp is illuminated and the indicator chime is sounding...	The seatbelt warning lamp and indicator chime turn off.
The driver seatbelt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The seatbelt warning lamp and indicator chime remain off.

# Seatbelts

## SEATBELT REMINDER

### Belt-Minder™

This feature supplements the seatbelt warning function by providing additional reminders that intermittently sound a tone and illuminate the seatbelt warning light when you are in the driver seat or you have a front seat passenger and a seatbelt is unbuckled.

The system uses information from the front passenger sensing system to determine if a front seat passenger is present and therefore potentially in need of a warning. To avoid activating the Belt-Minder feature for objects you place in the front passenger seat, only the front seat passengers receive warnings as determined by the front passenger sensing system.

If the Belt-Minder warnings expire (warnings for about five minutes) for one passenger (driver or front passenger), the other passenger can still cause the Belt-Minder feature to turn on.

<b>If</b>	<b>Then</b>
You and the front seat passenger buckle your seatbelts before you switch the ignition on or less than 1-2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature will not activate.
You or the front seat passenger do not buckle your seatbelts before your vehicle reaches at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and 1-2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature activates, the seatbelt warning light illuminates and a warning tone sounds for 6 seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for about 5 minutes or until you and the front seat passenger buckle your seatbelts.
The seatbelt for the driver or front passenger is unbuckled for about 1 minute while the vehicle is traveling at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and more than 1-2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature activates, the seatbelt warning light illuminates and a warning tone sounds for 6 seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for about 5 minutes or until you and the front seat passenger buckle your seatbelts.

# Seatbelts

## Deactivating and Activating the Belt-Minder Feature



**WARNING:** While the system allows you to switch it off, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving a crash. We recommend you leave the system switched on. To reduce the risk of injury, do not switch the system on or off while driving your vehicle.

**Note:** *The driver and front passenger warnings switch on and off independently. When you perform this procedure for one seating position, do not buckle the other position as this terminates the process.*

Read Steps 1 - 4 thoroughly before proceeding with the programming procedure.

Before following the procedure, make sure that:

- The parking brake is set.
  - The transmission is in park (P).
  - The ignition is off.
  - The driver and front passenger seatbelts are unbuckled.
1. Switch the ignition on. Do not start the vehicle.
  2. Wait until the seatbelt warning light turns off (about one minute). After Step 2, wait an additional 5 seconds before proceeding with Step 3. Once you start Step 3, you must complete the procedure within 30 seconds.
  3. For the seating position you are switching off, buckle then unbuckle the seatbelt three times at a moderate speed, ending in the unbuckled state. After Step 3, the seatbelt warning light turns on.

4. While the seatbelt warning light is on, buckle and then unbuckle the seatbelt. After Step 4, the seatbelt warning light flashes for confirmation.

- This will switch the feature off for that seating position if it is currently on.
- This will switch the feature on for that seating position if it is currently off.

## CHILD RESTRAINT AND SEATBELT MAINTENANCE

Inspect the vehicle seatbelts and child safety seat systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle and child restraint seatbelts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle seatbelt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front seatbelt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seat backrest (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a crash. Read the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint.

We recommend that all seatbelt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a crash be replaced. However, if the crash was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Seatbelt assemblies not in use during a crash should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

Properly care for seatbelts. See **Vehicle Care** (page 175).

# Seatbelts

## SEATBELT EXTENSIONS



**WARNING:** Persons who fit into the vehicle's seatbelt should not use an extension. Unnecessary use could result in serious personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Only use extensions provided free of charge by Ford Motor Company dealers. The dealer will provide an extension designed specifically for this vehicle, model year and seating position. The use of an extension intended for another vehicle, model year or seating position may not offer you the full protection of your vehicle's seatbelt restraint system.



**WARNING:** Never use seatbelt extensions to install child restraints.



**WARNING:** Do not use extensions to change the way the seatbelt fits across the torso, over the lap or to make the seatbelt buckle easier to reach.

If, because of body size or driving position, it is not possible to properly fasten the seatbelt over your lap and shoulder, an extension that is compatible with the seatbelts is available free of charge from Ford Motor Company dealers. Only Ford seatbelt extensions made by the original equipment seatbelts manufacturer should be used with Ford seatbelts. Ask your authorized dealer if your extension is compatible with your Ford vehicle restraint system.

# Personal Safety System™

---

The Personal Safety System provides an improved overall level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to help further reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system analyzes different occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices to help better protect a range of occupants in a variety of frontal crash situations.

The vehicle Personal Safety System consists of:

- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints.
- Seatbelts with pretensioners, energy management retractors and seatbelt usage sensors.
- Front passenger sensing system.
- Passenger airbag off and on indicator lamp.
- Front crash severity sensors.
- Restraints control module with impact and safing sensors.
- Restraint system warning light and backup tone.
- The electrical wiring for the airbags, crash sensors, front seatbelt usage sensors, front passenger sensing system and indicator lights.

## **How Does the Personal Safety System Work?**

The Personal Safety System can adapt the deployment strategy of the safety devices according to crash severity and occupant conditions. A collection of crash and occupant sensors provides information to the restraints control module. During a crash, the restraints control module may deploy one or both stages of the dual-stage airbags based on crash severity and occupant conditions.

# Supplementary Restraints System

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION



**WARNING:** Airbags do not inflate slowly or gently, and the risk of injury from a deploying airbag is the greatest close to the trim covering the airbag module.



**WARNING:** All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



**WARNING:** Always use appropriate child restraints. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



**WARNING:** Never place your arm over the airbag module as a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries.



**WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child restraint. Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an active airbag.



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag supplemental restraint systems or its fuses as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** Several airbag system components get hot after inflation. To reduce the risk of injury, do not touch them after inflation.



**WARNING:** If the airbag has deployed, the airbag will not function again and must be replaced immediately. If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The airbags are a supplemental restraint system and are designed to work with the seatbelts to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags do not inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.

**Note:** *You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (for example, baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.

Though the system is designed to help reduce serious injuries, contact with a deploying airbag may also cause abrasions or swelling. Temporary hearing loss is also a possibility as a result of the noise associated with a deploying airbag. Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures,

# Supplementary Restraints System

facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are out of position at the time of airbag deployment. It is extremely important that occupants are properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.

Routine maintenance of the airbags is not required.

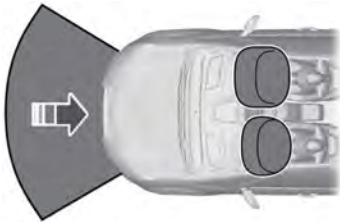
## DRIVER AND PASSENGER AIRBAGS



**WARNING:** Never place your arm over the airbag module as a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries.



**WARNING:** NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.



E151127

The driver and front passenger airbags deploy during significant frontal and near frontal crashes.

The driver and passenger front airbag system consists of:

- Driver and passenger airbag modules.
- Front passenger sensing system.



• Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 41).

## Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment



**WARNING:** National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 in (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

After all occupants put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seatback, and is centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash greatly increases.

## Children and Airbags



**WARNING:** NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.



# Supplementary Restraints System



E142846

## FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM



**WARNING:** Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.



**WARNING:** Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system. This could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

This system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger seat and seatbelt to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the front passenger frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.



E179527

The front passenger sensing system uses a passenger airbag off indicator which illuminates and stays lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled.

The indicator lamp is on the overhead console.

**Note:** When you first switch the ignition on, the indicator lamp illuminates for a short period of time to confirm it is functional.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag when it detects a rear facing infant seat, a forward-facing child restraint, or a booster seat. The sensor turns off the passenger front airbag and side airbag when the passenger seat is empty.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag, the indicator lamp illuminates and stays lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled.
- If you install the child restraint and the indicator lamp is not lit, switch the vehicle off, remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

# Supplementary Restraints System

The front passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag (may inflate), the indicator lamp will be unlit and stays unlit.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger seat, but the airbag off indicator lamp is lit, it is possible that the person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Switch the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seatback in the full upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This allows the system to detect that person and enable the passenger front airbag.

Occupant	Passenger Airbag OFF Indicator	Passenger Airbag
Empty	Lit	Disabled
Child	Lit	Disabled
Adult	Unlit	Enabled

**Note:** When the passenger airbag off light illuminates, the passenger side airbag (near the B-pillar) may be disabled to avoid the risk of airbag deployment injuries.

After all occupants put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seatback, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash greatly increases.

If you think that the status of the passenger airbag off indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console.
- Objects hanging off the seatback.
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap.
- Cargo interference with the seat.

The conditions listed above may cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat may appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions described in the list above.



Make sure the front passenger sensing system is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 41).

# Supplementary Restraints System

If the airbag readiness light is lit, do the following:

The driver and adult passenger should check for objects interfering with the seat.

If there are objects interfering with the seat, take the following steps to remove the obstruction:

- Pull the vehicle over.
- Switch the ignition off.
- Driver and adult passenger should check for any objects interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction(s) (if found).
- Restart the vehicle.
- Wait at least two minutes and verify that the airbag readiness light is no longer illuminated.
- If the airbag readiness light remains illuminated, this may or may not be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle immediately to an authorized dealer.

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact the Ford GT Concierge.

## SIDE AIRBAGS



**WARNING:** To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the airbag.



**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the B-pillar.



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag supplemental restraint systems or its fuses on a vehicle containing air bags as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** If the side airbag has deployed, the airbag will not function again. The side airbag system (including the seat) must be inspected as soon as possible. If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The side airbags are near the B-pillar. In certain sideways crashes, the airbag on the side affected by the crash will be inflated. The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided occupants in side impact crashes.

The system consists of the following:

- An embossed side panel indicating that side airbags are on your vehicle.
- Side airbags near the B-pillar.
- Front passenger sensing system.



• Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 41).

**Note:** *The passenger sensing system will deactivate the passenger side airbag (near the B-pillar) if it detects an empty, unbuckled passenger seat.*

# Supplementary Restraints System

The design and development of the side airbag system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags.

## DRIVER AND PASSENGER KNEE AIRBAGS



**WARNING:** To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the knee airbag.

The knee airbags are under or within the instrument panel. During a crash, the restraints control module may activate the driver and passenger knee airbags based on crash severity and occupant conditions. Under certain crash and occupant conditions, the driver and passenger knee airbag may deploy, but the driver front airbag may not activate. As with front and side airbags, it is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



Make sure the knee airbags are operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 41).

## CRASH SENSORS AND AIRBAG INDICATOR



**WARNING:** Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of your vehicle (including hood, bumper system, frame, front end body structure, tow hooks and hood pins) may affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify or add equipment to the front end of your vehicle.

Your vehicle has a collection of crash and occupant sensors which provide information to the restraints control module. The restraints control module deploys (activates) the front seatbelt pretensioners, driver airbag, passenger airbag, knee airbag(s) and side airbags. Based on the type of crash, the restraints control module deploys the appropriate safety devices.

The restraints control module monitors the readiness of the safety devices and the crash and occupant sensors. The readiness of the safety system is indicated by a warning indicator light in the instrument cluster or by a backup tone if the warning light is not working. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:



The readiness light does not illuminate immediately after you switch the ignition on.

- The readiness light either flashes or stays lit.
- The system has five tones that repeat periodically until the problem, the light or both are repaired.

# Supplementary Restraints System

---

If you experience any of these events, even intermittently, have a qualified technician service the supplemental restraint system immediately. If it is not serviced, the system may not function properly in a crash.

The design of the seatbelt pretensioners and the front airbag supplemental restraint system is to activate when the vehicle sustains frontal deceleration sufficient to cause the restraints control module to deploy a safety device.

If the seatbelt pretensioners or front airbags do not activate for both front seat occupants in a crash, it does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the restraints control module determined the accident conditions (crash severity, belt usage) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices.

- The design of the front airbags is to activate only in frontal and near-frontal crashes (not rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts unless the crash causes sufficient frontal deceleration).
- The design of the seatbelt pretensioners is to activate in frontal, near-frontal and side crashes.
- The knee airbag(s) may deploy based on crash severity and occupant conditions.
- The design of the side airbags is to inflate in certain side crashes. Side airbags may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation.

## AIRBAG DISPOSAL

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags must be disposed of by qualified personnel.

# 911 Assist

## WHAT IS 911 ASSIST

911 Assist is a SYNC system feature that can call for help if you're in an accident. If a crash deploys an airbag (excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts [if equipped]) or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your SYNC-equipped vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing 911 through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone. You can learn more about the 911 Assist feature, by visiting:

Website
<a href="http://www.owner.ford.com">www.owner.ford.com</a> <a href="http://www.syncmyride.ca">www.syncmyride.ca</a> <a href="http://www.syncmaroute.ca">www.syncmaroute.ca</a>

Not all crashes will deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off (the triggers for 911 Assist). If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses its connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC will search for and try to connect to a previously paired cell phone; SYNC will then attempt to call the emergency services.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time (about 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial 911.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call 911, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel."

If you do not cancel the call, and SYNC makes a successful call, a pre-recorded message plays for the 911 operator, and then the occupant(s) in your vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all 911 systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

During an emergency call, the system transmits vehicle data to the emergency service. See **Data Recording** (page 7).

## EMERGENCY CALL REQUIREMENTS



**WARNING:** Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.



**WARNING:** Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.



**WARNING:** Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on before a crash, the system will not dial for help which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.

# 911 Assist

---

- SYNC must be powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.
- You must pair and connect a Bluetooth enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected Bluetooth enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

**Note:** *If any user sets 911 Assist to on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is switched off and the phone is connected to SYNC, an icon displays on the status bar.*

**Note:** *Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.*

## EMERGENCY CALL LIMITATIONS

The SYNC 911 Assist feature only operates in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

- Your cellular phone or 911 Assist hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) thrown from your vehicle are the ones paired and connected to the system.

# Keys and Remote Controls

---

## GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with License-exempt RSS Standards of Industry Canada (IC). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**Note:** *Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.*

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 33 ft (10 m). Vehicles equipped with the remote start feature have a greater range.

One of the following could cause a decrease in operating range:

- Weather conditions.
- Nearby radio towers.
- Structures around your vehicle.
- Other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other radio transmitters, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, wireless remote controls, cell phones, battery chargers and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you cannot use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

**Note:** *Make sure to lock your vehicle before leaving it unattended.*

**Note:** *If you are in range, the remote control operates if you press any button unintentionally.*

**Note:** *The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.*

## Intelligent Access (If Equipped)

The system uses a radio frequency signal to communicate with your vehicle and authorizes your vehicle to unlock when one of the following conditions are met:

- You activate the front exterior door handle switch.
- You press the luggage compartment button.
- You press a button on the remote control.

If excessive radio frequency interference is present in the area, or if the remote control battery is low, you may need to mechanically unlock your door. You can use the mechanical key blade in your intelligent access key to open the driver door in this situation. See **Remote Control** (page 46).



# Keys and Remote Controls

## REMOTE CONTROL

### Intelligent Access Key



Push the release button and pull the key blade out.

Your remote control operates the power locks and rear hatch. The remote control must be in your vehicle to activate the push-button start system.

### Removable Key Blade

The remote control also contains a removable mechanical key blade that you can use to unlock the rear hatch and release the driver door.



E151795

**Note:** *Your vehicle's backup keys came with a security tag that provides important vehicle key cut information. Keep the tag in a safe place for future reference.*

### Using the Key Blade

A manual driver door release is in the engine compartment.

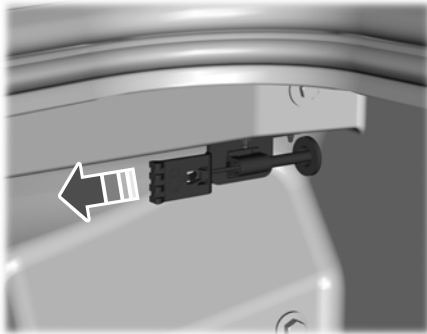
To access the door release:

# Keys and Remote Controls



E220693

1. Open the rear hatch using the key blade.



E229694

2. Pull the release on the left side of the storage box under the rear hatch.

## Replacing the Battery



**WARNING:** Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.



**WARNING:** If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way.

Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

**Note:** Replacing the battery will not delete the remote control from the vehicle. The remote control should operate normally.

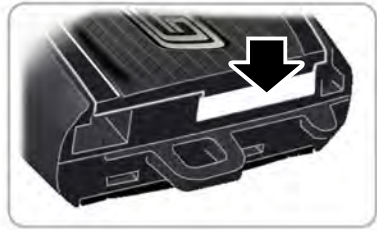
A message will appear in the information display when the remote control battery is low.

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery.

## Keys and Remote Controls



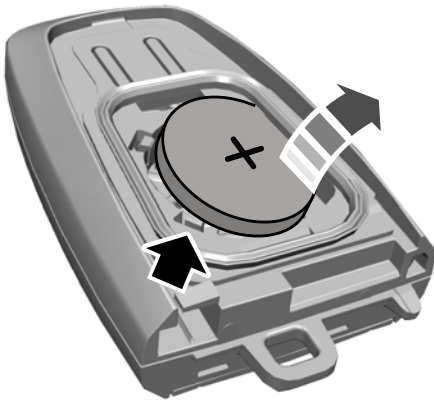
1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.



E234660

2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.

# Keys and Remote Controls



3. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and carefully remove the battery.

4. Install a new battery with the + facing upward.
5. Reinstall the battery housing cover onto the remote control and install the key blade.

## Locating Your Vehicle



Press the button twice within three seconds. The horn sounds and the direction indicators flash. We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

## Sounding a Panic Alarm

**Note:** *The panic alarm will only operate when the ignition is off.*



Press the button to activate the alarm. Press the button again or switch the ignition on to deactivate.

## Remote Control Information Messages

Message	Action
Key Battery Low Replace Soon	Displays when the remote control battery requires replacing.

## REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

Replacement keys or remote controls can be purchased from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 54).

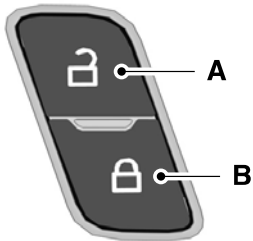
# Doors and Locks

## LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

You can use the power door lock control or the remote control to lock and unlock your vehicle.

### Power Door Locks

The power door lock control is on the driver and front passenger door panels.



E196954

- A Unlock.
- B Lock.

### Door Lock Indicator

An LED in the door lock switch lights when you lock the door. It remains lit for up to 10 minutes after you switch off the ignition.

### Remote Control

You can use the remote control at any time.

### Unlocking the Doors (Two-Stage Unlock)



Press the button to unlock the driver door.

Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors. The directional indicators flash.

Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for three seconds to change between driver-door or all-door unlock mode. The direction indicators flash twice to indicate a change to the unlocking mode. Driver-door unlock mode only unlocks the driver door when you press the unlock button once. All-door unlock mode unlocks all doors with one press of the unlock button. The unlocking mode applies to the remote control and intelligent access. You can also change the mode in the information display. See **General Information** (page 74).

### Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all the doors. The direction indicators flash. Press the button again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed and locked. The doors lock again, the horn sounds and the direction indicators flash if all the doors are closed and locked.

### Mislock

If any door or engine compartment is open, or if the hood is open, the horn sounds twice and the directional indicators do not flash.

### Activating Intelligent Access

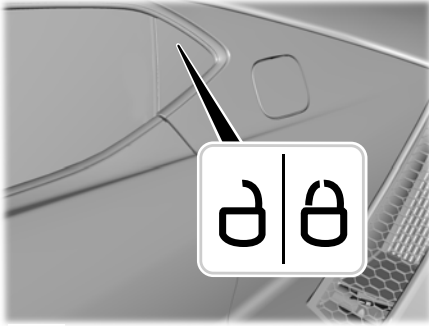
You must have the intelligent access key within 3 ft (1 m) of your vehicle.

### At a Door

Push the door release panel to unlock and release the door. Move your fingers behind the edge of the door to lift the door open.

**Note:** *Doors open upward and outward. Make sure there is enough room to open the door both upward and outward.*

# Doors and Locks



E269486

Touch and hold the red lock indicator on the rear quarter window to lock the door. The indicator behind the quarter window shows if your vehicle is locked or unlocked. There is a brief delay before you can unlock your vehicle again.

## Smart Unlocks for Intelligent Access Keys

This feature helps to prevent you from locking your intelligent access key inside your vehicle's passenger compartment.

If you attempt to lock your vehicle with the intelligent access key inside, all of the doors immediately unlock and a tone sounds, indicating that a key is inside. The system searches for an intelligent access key inside the vehicle after you lock the door, the transmission is in park (P) and the ignition is off.

You can override the smart unlock feature and intentionally lock the intelligent access key inside your vehicle.

To do this, lock your vehicle after you have closed all the doors by:

- Pressing the lock button on another intelligent access key.
- Touching the locking area on the door panel with another intelligent access key in your hand.

When you open one of the front doors and lock your vehicle using the power door lock control, all doors lock then unlock if:

- The ignition is on.
- The ignition is off and your vehicle is not in park (P).

## Autolock (If Equipped)

Autolock locks all the doors when:

- All doors are closed.
- The ignition is on.
- You shift into any gear putting your vehicle in motion.
- Your vehicle reaches a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h).

Autolock repeats when:

- You open then close any door while the ignition is on and your vehicle speed is 9 mph (15 km/h) or lower.
- Your vehicle reaches a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h).

## Autounlock

Autounlock unlocks all the doors when:

- Your vehicle has been moving at a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h).
- All doors are closed.
- The ignition is on.
- The vehicle comes to a stop and you switch the ignition off or to the accessory position.
- You open the driver door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off or to accessory.

# Doors and Locks

**Note:** The doors will not autounlock if you electronically lock your vehicle after you switch the ignition off and before you open the driver door.

## Enabling or Disabling Autolock and Autounlock

**Note:** You can switch autounlock and autolock on or off independently of each other.

Autolock is not configurable in all markets. If the autolock settings are not available in your information display, then the system is not configurable. See **General Information** (page 74).

## Illuminated Entry

The interior lamp illuminates when you unlock the doors with the remote entry system.

The illuminated entry system turns off the lights if:

- The ignition is on.
- You press the remote control lock button.
- After 25 seconds of illumination.

The light does not turn off if:

- You switch them on with the lamp control.
- Any door is open.

## Illuminated Exit

The interior lamp illuminates when all doors are closed and you switch the ignition off.

The lamp turns off if all the doors remain closed and:

- 25 seconds elapse.
- You press the push button ignition switch.

## Battery Saver

If you leave on the courtesy lamps, dome lamps or headlamps, the battery saver turns them off 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off.

## Accessory Mode Battery Saver for Intelligent Access Keys

If you leave your vehicle switched on, it shuts off when it detects a certain amount of battery drain, or after 45 minutes.

## OPENING THE DOORS

**Note:** While your vehicle is in motion, the door release buttons only function if you press the interior unlock button and door interior release button within two seconds.

## Opening the Doors from Inside

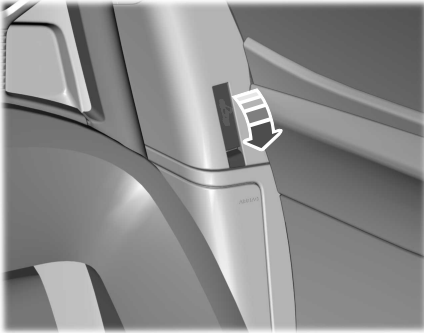


Press the door release button located on the arm rest to release the door. Push the door out and up to open the door. The hydraulic lift cylinder assists in the door movement once you start to open the door.

# Doors and Locks

---

## EMERGENCY DOOR RELEASE



E232493

Your doors can be manually opened from the inside of the car when the door release button is not functioning or if there is a low battery or other electrical concerns. Grab the emergency door release pull strap located on the B-pillar trim beside the seat and pull it up and out to release the door. There is an emergency release pull strap for each door.



## PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

**Note:** *The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and a loss of security protection.*

**Note:** *Metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain may cause vehicle starting problems if they are too close to the key when starting your vehicle. Prevent these objects from touching the coded key while starting your vehicle. Switch the ignition off, move all objects on the key chain away from the coded key and restart your vehicle if a problem occurs.*

**Note:** *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

## SecuriLock

The system helps prevent your vehicle from starting unless you use a coded key programmed to your vehicle. Using the wrong key may prevent your vehicle from starting. A message may appear in the information display.

If you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key, it is not operating properly. A message may appear in the information display.

## Automatic Arming

Your vehicle arms immediately after switching the ignition off.

## Automatic Disarming

Switching the ignition on with a coded key disarms your vehicle.

## Replacement Keys

**Note:** *Your vehicle comes equipped with two intelligent access keys.*

The intelligent access key functions as a programmed key that operates the driver door lock and activates the intelligent access with push button start system, as well as a remote control.

If your programmed transmitters are lost or stolen and you do not have an extra coded key, contact the Ford GT concierge to have your Ford GT transported to your Certified Ford GT Service Dealership to erase the key codes from your vehicle and program new coded keys. See **About This Manual** (page 5).

Store an extra programmed key away from your vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconveniences. See your authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys.

## Programming a Spare Intelligent Access Key

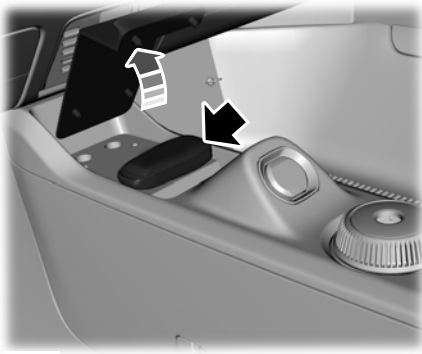
**Note:** *You can program a maximum of four intelligent access keys to your vehicle.*

You must have two previously programmed intelligent access keys inside your vehicle and the new unprogrammed intelligent access keys readily accessible. See an authorized dealer to have the spare key programmed if two previously programmed keys are not available.

Make sure that your vehicle is off before beginning this procedure. Make sure that you close all the doors before beginning and that they remain closed throughout the procedure. Perform all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence. Stop and wait for at least one minute before starting again if you perform any steps out of sequence.

Read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

# Security



E228717

1. Remove the rubber mat from the console. Place the first programmed key on the flat surface under the mat where indicated, then press the push button ignition switch.
2. Wait five seconds and then press the push button ignition switch again.
3. Remove the intelligent access key.
4. Within 10 seconds, place a second programmed intelligent access key on the flat surface under the mat where indicated. Press the push button ignition switch.
5. Wait five seconds and then press the push button ignition switch again.
6. Remove the intelligent access key.
7. Place the unprogrammed intelligent access key on the flat surface under the mat where indicated and press the push button ignition switch.

Programming is now complete. Verify the remote control functions operate and your vehicle starts with the new intelligent access key.

If programming was not successful, wait 10 seconds and repeat Steps 1 through 7. If you are still unsuccessful, take your vehicle to your authorized dealer.

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM

The system will warn you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle. If a person opens any door, the rear hatch or the hood without using the remote, it triggers the alarm.

The direction indicators will flash and the horn will sound if unauthorized entry is attempted while the alarm is armed.

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

### Arming the Alarm

The alarm is ready to arm when there is not a key in your vehicle. Electronically lock your vehicle to arm the alarm.

### Disarming the Alarm

Disarm the alarm by any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or rear hatch with the remote control.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.

**Note:** *If your remote control comes equipped with a panic button, pressing the panic button on the remote control will stop the horn and signal indicators, but will not disarm the system.*

# Steering Wheel

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 87).

**Note:** There are two steering column adjustment levers on the steering column. The left lever is for the telescope adjustment. The right lever is for the tilt and small telescope adjustments.



E232042

1. Use the left lever to unlock the steering column.

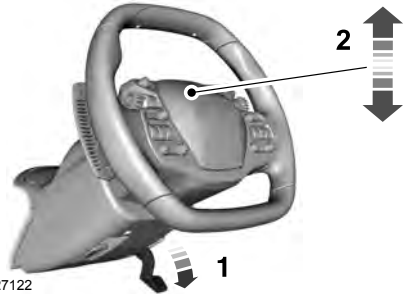
**Note:** You have to hold the lever down to make adjustments.

2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired telescope position.



E232043

3. Lock the steering column.



E227122

1. Use the right lever to unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired tilt and telescope position.



E227240

3. Lock the steering column.

# Steering Wheel

## AUDIO CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

You can operate the following functions with the control:



E227115

- A Volume down.
- B Volume up.



E227117

- A Seek down.
- B Seek up.

## Seek, Next or Previous

Press the seek button to:

- Tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset.
- Play the next or the previous track.

Press and hold the seek button to:

- Tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band.
- Seek or fast forward through a track.

## VOICE CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)



E227121

See your SYNC information.

## CRUISE CONTROL



E227119

See **Cruise Control** (page 120).

# Steering Wheel

## INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL



E227121

See **Information Displays** (page 74).

## HORN



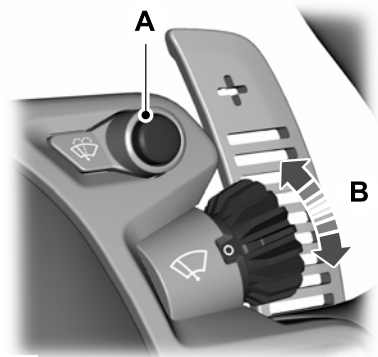
## DRIVE MODE CONTROL



E227821

See **Driving Aids** (page 121).

## WIPER AND WASHER CONTROL

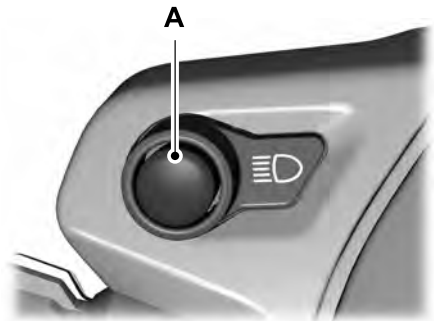


E227822

- A Windshield Washers.
- B Windshield Wipers.

See **Wipers and Washers** (page 61).

## LIGHTING CONTROL



E227823

- A Highbeam control.

# Steering Wheel

---

See **Lighting** (page 62).

## **Performance Shift Indicator**

There are LEDs at the top of the steering wheel rim that illuminate in sequence to indicate specific engine RPM. See the performance shift indicator chart for more information. See **Automatic Transmission** (page 105).



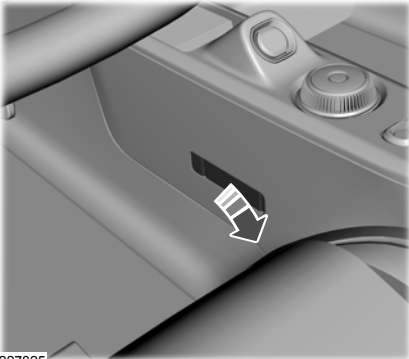
E290146

# Adjustable Pedals

## ADJUSTING THE PEDALS



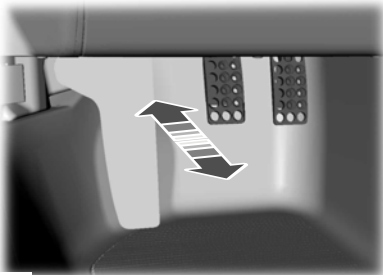
**WARNING:** Never use the pedal adjustment controls when your feet are on the accelerator or brake pedal when the vehicle is moving.



E227825

You can find the adjustment strap on the left side of the center console.

**Note:** *Adjust the pedals only when your vehicle is in park (P) and the engine is off.*



E227824

**Note:** *The brake and accelerator pedals move together during the adjustment procedure.*

1. Position yourself comfortably in the seat.
2. Pull the pedal adjustment strap to release the pedal module. The pedals automatically move toward your feet.
3. Place your foot on the foot rest and move the pedals to a comfortable position.
4. Release the adjustment strap to lock the pedals in position. Reinstall the strap into the recessed pocket after you complete the adjustment.
5. Test the application of the brake and accelerator pedals.
6. If needed, perform the pedal adjustment over until the pedals are at a distance that is both comfortable and safe to operate.

# Wipers and Washers

## WINDSHIELD WIPERS

**Note:** Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

**Note:** If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.

**Note:** Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

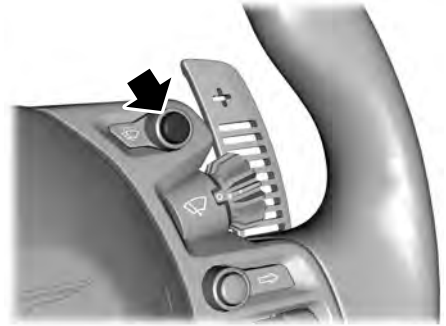
Rotate the knob to switch on the windshield wipers.



E226966

- Off.
- I Intermittent - long interval.
- II Intermittent - short interval.
- III Normal wipe.
- IIII High-speed wipe.

## WINDSHIELD WASHERS



E226967

**Note:** Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.

Press and hold the button to spray windshield washer fluid and switch on the wipers. When you release the button, the wipers turn on for three additional wipes and then turn off.

**Note:** Briefly pressing the washer button causes a single wipe without washer fluid.

When you use the washers, there is a courtesy wipe after a short delay to clear away any drops on the windshield. You can switch this feature on or off. See **Information Displays** (page 74).



# Lighting

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Condensation in the Exterior Front Lamps and Rear Lamps

Exterior front lamps and rear lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

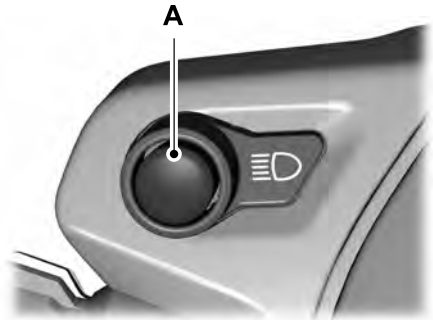
## LIGHTING CONTROL



E252122

- A Off.
- B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and rear lamps.
- C Headlamps.
- D Autolamps.

### High Beams



E227823

- A High beam control.

Press the button briefly to flash the high beams.

# Lighting

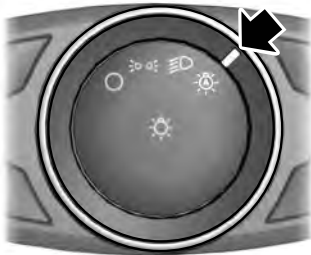
Press and hold to switch the high beams on.

Press and hold again to switch the high beams off.

## AUTOLAMPS



**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.



E142451

When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, the headlamps turn on in low light situations, or when the wipers turn on.

The headlamps remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. Use the information display controls to adjust the period of time that the headlamps remain on.

**Note:** If you switch on the autolamps, you cannot switch the high beams on until the system turns the low beams on.

## INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER

**Note:** If you disconnect the battery or it becomes discharged, the illuminated components turn to the maximum setting.



E236438

- A Press repeatedly or press and hold to brighten.
- B Press repeatedly or press and hold to dim.

## DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS



**WARNING:** The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

# Lighting

To switch the system on:

- For vehicles sold in the United States, the lighting control must be in the autolamps position. The lamps turn on in daylight and turn the headlamps on when ambient light is low. You can enable this feature in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 74).
- For vehicle sold in Canada, the daytime running lamps system activates the rear lamps and turns on in both the off and autolamps position. You cannot disable this feature.

The lamps turn on under the following conditions:

- You open any door.
- You press the panic button on the remote control.
- You press the lamp button.



E187345

## DIRECTION INDICATORS



E229691

- A Left direction indicator.
- B Right direction indicator.

**Note:** The direction indicator buttons are on the steering wheel.

Press and hold the button briefly to use the direction indicators.

Press the button briefly to flash the indicator three times.

## INTERIOR LAMPS

**Note:** The interior lamp switch is on the overhead console.

# Windows and Mirrors

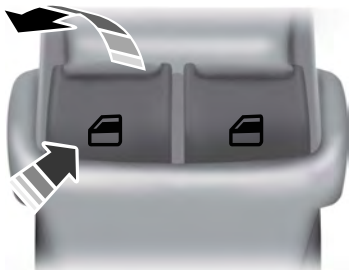
## POWER WINDOWS



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



E146043

**Note:** You may hear a pulsing noise when just one of the windows is open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.

Press the switch to open the window.

Lift the switch to close the window.

### One-Touch Down

Press the switch fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

### One-Touch Up

Lift the switch fully and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

## Bounce-Back

The window will stop and reverse some distance if it detects an obstacle while closing.

### Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature



**WARNING:** If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Pull up the window switch and hold within two seconds of the window reaching the bounce-back position. The window will travel up with no bounce-back protection. The window will stop if you release the switch before the window is fully closed.

### Accessory Delay

You can use the window switches for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open either front door.

## GLOBAL OPENING

You can use the remote control to open the windows with the ignition off.

**Note:** You can enable or disable this feature in the information display, or see an authorized dealer. See **General Information** (page 74).

**Note:** To operate this feature, accessory delay must not be active.

# Windows and Mirrors

## Remote Control Front Windows

You can open the windows for a short time after you unlock your vehicle with the remote control. After you unlock your vehicle, press and hold the remote control unlock button to open the windows. Release the button once movement starts. Press the lock or unlock button to stop movement.

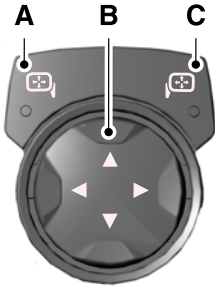
## EXTERIOR MIRRORS

### Power Exterior Mirrors



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

**Note:** Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.



E176804

- A Left-hand mirror
- B Adjustment control
- C Right-hand mirror

To adjust a mirror:

1. Select the mirror you want to adjust. The control illuminates.
2. Adjust the position of the mirror.
3. Press the mirror switch again.

### Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

## INTERIOR MIRROR



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

**Note:** Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.

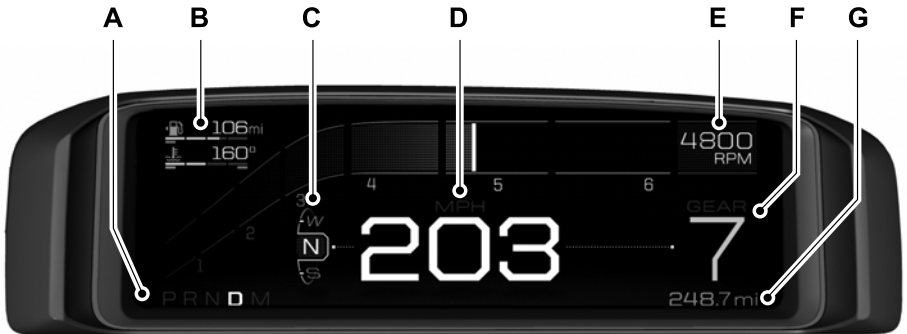
You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. This mirror has a second pivot point, which lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

# Instrument Cluster

## GAUGES

**Note:** Cluster shown in standard measure. Metric clusters are similar.



E227915

- A Transmission Gear Position.
- B Left Information Display.
- C Drive Mode.
- D Center Information Display.
- E Tachometer.
- F Right Information Display.
- G Odometer.

## Information Display

### Left Information Display

Varies depending on drive mode.

Normal, Wet and Sport Mode:

- Fuel Level.
- Engine Coolant Temperature.

Track Mode:

- Speedometer.

V-Max Mode:

- Fuel Level.

## Drive Mode

See **Drive Mode Control** (page 121).

### Center Information Display

Varies depending on drive mode.

Normal, Wet and V-Max Mode:

- Speedometer.

Sport and Track Mode:

- Gear.

### Right Information Display

Varies depending on drive mode.

# Instrument Cluster

---

Normal and Wet Mode:

- Gear.

Sport Mode:

- Speedometer.

Track Mode:

- Engine Coolant Temperature.
- Engine Oil Temperature.
- Transmission Temperature.
- Fuel Level.

V-Max Mode:

- Engine Coolant Temperature.
- Engine Oil Temperature.
- Engine Oil Pressure.
- Turbo Boost Pressure.

## Trip Computer

The trip computer functions only operate when the engine is running. See **General Information** (page 74).

## Fuel Gauge

**Note:** *The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a slope.*

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

## Variations

**Note:** *The low fuel warning and distance-to-empty warning can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

The gauge is divided into four segments and moves towards the right when you refuel your vehicle. If the gauge remains in the far left segment after adding fuel, this indicates your vehicle needs service soon.

After refueling, some variability in gauge position is normal:

- It may take a short time for the gauge to reach full after leaving the gas station. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- The fuel amount dispensed into the tank is a little less or more than the gauge indicated. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- If the gas station nozzle shuts off before the tank is full, try a different gas pump nozzle.

## Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel reminder triggers when the distance to empty value reaches 50 mi (80 km) to empty, with additional warnings at 25 mi (40 km), 10 mi (20 km) and 0 mi (0 km) to empty if the message is cleared each time.

In Track Mode, the distance to empty warnings appear at 10% and 0% to empty if the message is cleared each time.

After extended periods of performance driving, your distance to empty value may display low even after refueling. Drive your vehicle under normal operating conditions to recalibrate the distance to empty or reset your trip computer.

# Instrument Cluster

Driving Type (Fuel Economy Conditions)	Distance to Empty	Fuel Gauge Position
Highway driving.	50 mi (80 km)	1/8 tank.
Performance driving or extended idle.	50 mi (80 km)	1/4 tank.

## Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

At normal operating temperature, the engine coolant temperature will be in the middle range of the gauge. If the engine coolant temperature exceeds the normal range, the gauge will be highlighted. Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let it cool.

## Engine Oil Temperature Gauge

If the engine oil temperature exceeds the normal range, the engine is overheating. Reduce engine speed as soon as safely possible to allow the engine to cool. If you continue to operate the engine at high engine speeds, the engine speed reduces automatically to prevent engine damage.

## Engine Oil Pressure Gauge

Oil pressure varies with engine speed. The pressure rises as engine speed rises and drops as engine speed drops.

If the pressure drops below the normal range of the gauge, a warning lamp illuminates and a message appears in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level.

## Gauge Mode

On the right side of the instrument cluster, you can configure which gauges are displayed.

## WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

**Note:** *Some warning indicators appear in the information display and operate the same as a warning lamp but do not illuminate when you start your vehicle.*

## Anti-Lock Braking System



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. You will continue to have the normal braking system (without ABS) unless the brake system warning lamp is also illuminated. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer.



# Instrument Cluster

## Battery



If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

## Brake System



**WARNING:** Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



It will illuminate when you engage the parking brake with the ignition on.

If it illuminates when you are driving, check that the parking brake is not engaged. If the parking brake is not engaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system malfunction. Have the system checked immediately by your authorized dealer.

## Carbon Ceramic Brakes



It illuminates when the brake pads are worn and require replacement.

## Cruise Control



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

See **Using Cruise Control** (page 120).

## Damper Comfort Mode



It illuminates when you switch this feature on. See **Drive Mode Control** (page 121).

## Direction Indicator



Illuminates when the left or right turn signal or the hazard warning flasher is turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for an inoperative bulb. See **Maintenance** (page 157).

## Door Ajar



Displays when the ignition is on and any door is not completely closed.

## Electric Park Brake



It illuminates or flashes when the electric parking brake has a malfunction. See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 111).

## Engine Coolant Temperature



Illuminates when the engine coolant temperature is high. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, switch off the engine and let cool. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 161).

## Engine Oil



If it illuminates with the engine running or when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level.

See **Engine Oil Check** (page 160).

# Instrument Cluster

**Note:** Do not resume your journey if it illuminates despite the level being correct. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

## Fasten Seatbelt



It illuminates and a chime sounds until you fasten the seatbelts.

## Front Airbag




If it fails to illuminate when you start your vehicle, continues to flash or remains on, it indicates a malfunction. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

## Front Lift Mode Active



Illuminates when you switch this feature on. See **Drive Mode Control** (page 121).

## Frost Warning Lamp



**WARNING:** Even if the temperature rises to above 39°F (4°C) there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.



It illuminates when the outside air temperature is 39°F (4°C) or below.

## Hatch Ajar



Displays when the ignition is on and the hatch is not completely closed.

## High Beam



It illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on or use the headlamp flasher.

## Hood Ajar



Displays when the ignition is on and the hood is not completely closed.

## Hydraulic System Fault



Illuminates when there is an issue with your vehicle's hydraulic system. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

## Launch Control



Illuminates when you switch this feature on. See **Using Stability Control** (page 116).

## Low Beam Malfunction Warning Lamp



It illuminates when there is a malfunction with a low beam headlamp bulb.

## Low Fuel Level



It will illuminate when the fuel level is low or the fuel tank is nearly empty. Refuel as soon as possible.

## Low Tire Pressure Warning



It will illuminate when your tire pressure is low. If the lamp remains on with the engine running or when driving, check your tire pressures as soon as possible.

# Instrument Cluster

It will also illuminate momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

## Parking Lamps



It will illuminate when you switch the parking lamps on.

## Powertrain Fault



Illuminates when a powertrain fault has been detected. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

## Rear Fog Lamp (If Equipped)



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

## Ride Height System Fault



Illuminates when there is an issue with the ride height system.

## Service Engine Soon



If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

It also illuminates momentarily when you switch the ignition on prior to engine start to confirm the lamp is functional and to indicate whether your vehicle is ready for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) testing.

Normally, it illuminates until the engine is cranked and automatically turns off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds it flashes eight times, this indicates that your vehicle is not ready for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) testing. See **Emission Law** (page 101).

## Stability Control



Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** *The system automatically turns off if there is a malfunction.*

See **Using Stability Control** (page 116).

## Stability Control Off



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

## Transmission Fault



Illuminates when there is a malfunction with your transmission. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

# Instrument Cluster

---

## **AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS**

### **Keyless Warning Alert**

The horn will sound twice when you exit your vehicle with the intelligent access key and your vehicle is in ON, indicating your vehicle is still on. The horn will also sound twice when you exit your vehicle and attempt to lock the doors manually while the intelligent access key is still in the vehicle. The doors will not lock if the intelligent access key remains in the vehicle.

### **Headlamps On Warning Chime**

Sounds when you remove the key from the vehicle and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

# Information Displays

## GENERAL INFORMATION



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Various systems on your vehicle can be controlled using the information display controls on the steering wheel. Corresponding information is displayed in the information display.

**Note:** Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.

## Information Display Controls



E227121

- Press the return arrow button to enter the menu.
- Use the center toggle control to scroll through and highlight menu options.
- Press the **OK** button to enter a sub-menu.
- Press the **OK** button to choose and confirm settings or messages.
- Press the return arrow button to exit a menu.

You can switch some features on or off by pressing the **OK** button.

## Main Menu

Menu
Launch Control
Information
Navigation - Cancel Route
Rear Wing Deployment
Display Settings
Vehicle Settings

**Note:** You cannot switch on Launch Control in Wet Mode.

# Information Displays

Information	
No Content	
Trip/Fuel Economy	
Tire Pressure	
Navigation	
Speedometer km/h	
<b>Gauges</b> <sup>1</sup>	
<b>Configure Gauges</b> <sup>2</sup>	Coolant Temperature
	Oil Temperature
	Transmission Temperature
	Oil Pressure
	Inlet Air Temperature
	Turbo Boost Pressure
	Voltage
	Confirm and Exit

<sup>1</sup> In order to provide real-time values, some gauges may display more value fluctuation than other gauges during normal operation.

<sup>2</sup> You can display information for up to four gauges.

**Note:** The information you select for the on demand screen appears on the right-hand side of the cluster.

**Note:** Navigation only appears if you have a route active in your navigation.

Rear Wing Deployment
Choose your applicable setting.

**Note:** You cannot switch on Rear Wing Deployment in V-Max or Track Modes.

**Note:** If you deploy the rear wing, the system cannot lower it until you switch your setting to **Auto** and drive over a certain speed. See **Drive Mode Control** (page 121).

## Information Displays

Display Settings	
Distance	Choose your applicable setting.
Temperature	Choose your applicable setting.
Tire Pressure	Choose your applicable setting.
Language	Choose your applicable setting.

**Note:** *Changing the Distance setting also affects other gauge values.*

Vehicle Settings		
Performance Shift Indicator	Choose your applicable setting.	
Lighting	Autolamp Delay	
	Daytime Lights	
Locks	Autolock	
	Autounlock	
	Mislock Chirp	
	Remote Unlock	Choose your applicable setting.
Remote Start	Duration	Choose your applicable setting.
	System	
Tire Monitor	Hold <b>OK</b> to Reset	
Windows	Remote Open	
Wipers	Courtesy Wipe	

# Information Displays

## INFORMATION MESSAGES



E227121

Press the **OK** button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. The information display automatically removes other messages after a short time.

You need to confirm certain messages before you can access the menus.

## AdvanceTrac™

Message	Action
Service AdvanceTrac	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.
AdvanceTrac OFF	The driver has switched on or switched off the AdvanceTrac system.
AdvanceTrac ON	
AdvanceTrac PERFORMANCE	Displays if you switch on PERFORMANCE mode. See <b>Using Stability Control</b> (page 116).
AdvanceTrac PERFORMANCE +	Displays if you switch on PERFORMANCE+ mode. See <b>Using Stability Control</b> (page 116).
AdvanceTrac Change Request Not Available in Current Drive Mode	Displays if the current drive mode does not allow adjustments to the AdvanceTrac system. See <b>Using Stability Control</b> (page 116).

## Alarm

Message	Action
Vehicle Alarm To Stop Alarm, Start Vehicle.	Alarm triggered due to unauthorized entry. See <b>Anti-Theft Alarm</b> (page 55).



# Information Displays

## Battery and Charging System

Message	Action
Charging System Service Soon	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Charging System Service Now	The charging system needs servicing. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Battery State of Charge Low	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn your ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered.

## Doors and Locks

Message	Action
X Door Ajar	The door(s) listed is not completely closed.
Hood Ajar	The hood is not completely closed.
Hatch Ajar	The hatch is not completely closed.
Door Unlocked	Displays when the door lock turns off.
Door Fault Pull Release Strap Over Shoulder	Indicates a door fault that requires manually opening the door by the pull strap on the B-pillar. Contact an authorized dealer.
Door Fault Service Required	Indicates a fault with the electronic door system. Contact an authorized dealer.

## Engine

Message	Action
Engine Coolant Over Temperature	The engine coolant temperature is excessively high.
Power Reduced to Lower Engine Temp	The engine is overheating and the power has been reduced to assist in lowering the temperature. Stop in a safe place as soon as it is possible.
Vehicle is On	The engine is on and a door is open.

# Information Displays

## Fuel

Message	Action
Check Fuel Fill Inlet	The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.
Fuel Level Low XX Miles to Empty	An early reminder of a low fuel condition showing the estimated distance until tank is empty.
Fuel Level Low XX km to Empty	
Fuel Level Low	A reminder of a low fuel condition.

## Hill Start Assist

Message	Action
Hill Start Assist Not Available	Displays when hill start assist is not available. Contact your authorized dealer.

## Hydraulic System

Message	Action
TRACK Mode Not Available. Hydraulic System Charging	Displays when Track mode is not available due to the Hydraulic System Charging.
V-MAX Mode Not Available. Hydraulic System Charging	Displays when Track mode is not available due to the Hydraulic System Charging.
Ride Height System Fault	Displays when the ride height system is not functioning properly.
Hydraulic System Fault	Displays when the ride hydraulic system is not functioning properly. See an authorized dealer.
Front Lift Not Available. Hydraulic System Charging	Displays when front lift is not available due to the Hydraulic System Charging.

# Information Displays

## Keys and Intelligent Access

Message	Action
No Key Detected	The system does not detect a key in your vehicle. See <b>Keyless Starting</b> (page 91).
Restart Now or Key is Needed	You pressed the start/stop button to switch off the engine and your vehicle does not detect your intelligent access key inside your vehicle.
Starting System Fault	There is a problem with your vehicle's starting system. See an authorized dealer for service.
Key Program Successful	You have successfully programmed an intelligent access key to the system.
Key Program Failure	You have failed to program an intelligent access key to the system.
Max Number of Keys Learned	You have programmed the maximum number of keys to the system.
Not Enough Keys Learned	You have not programmed enough keys to the system.
Key Battery Low Replace Soon	The key battery is low. Change the battery as soon as possible.

## Maintenance

Message	Action
Low Engine Oil Pressure	Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible and turn off the engine. Check the oil level. If the warning stays on or continues to come on with your engine running, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Brake Fluid Level Low	The brake fluid level is low, inspect the brake system immediately. See <b>Brake Fluid Check</b> (page 166).
Check Brake System	The brake system needs servicing. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.

## Information Displays

Message	Action
Ceramic Brakes Replace All Brake Pads	The brake pads need replacement. Contact an authorized dealer.
Transport Mode Contact Dealer	Your vehicle is still in Transport or Factory mode. This may not allow some features to operate properly. See an authorized dealer.
Factory Mode Contact Dealer	

### Park Brake

Message	Action
To Release: Press Brake and Switch	Displays if you attempt to release the electric parking brake manually without pressing the brake pedal.
Park Brake Use Switch to Release	Displays if you must manually release the electric parking brake.
Park Brake Not Applied	Displays if you have not fully applied the electric parking brake.
Park Brake Not Released	Displays if you have not fully released the electric parking brake.
Park Brake Maintenance Mode	Displays if the electric parking brake system enters a special mode used to allow service of the rear brakes. Contact an authorized dealer.
Park Brake Limited Function Service Required	Displays if the electric park brake system detects a condition that requires service. Some functionality may still be available. See an authorized dealer.
Park Brake Malfunction Service Now	Displays if the electric parking brake system detects a condition that requires service. See an authorized dealer.
Park Brake On	Displays if the parking brake is set, the engine is running and you drive the vehicle more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after you release the parking brake, contact an authorized dealer.

### Remote Start

Message	Action
To Drive: Press Brake and Start Button	A reminder to apply the brake and push the start button to drive your vehicle after a remote start.

# Information Displays

## Starting System

Message	Action
Starting System Fault	There is a problem with your vehicle's starting system. See an authorized dealer for service.

## Steering System

Message	Action
Steering Lock Malfunction Service Now	The steering lock system has detected a condition that requires service. See an authorized dealer.
Steering Col. Lock Turn Wheel while Starting vehicle	You need to turn your steering wheel when starting your vehicle to unlock your steering column.

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Action
Tire Pressure Low	One or more tires on your vehicle has low tire pressure. See <b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System</b> (page 202).
Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	The tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer. See <b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System</b> (page 202).
Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	A tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning. See <b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System</b> (page 202). If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

# Information Displays

## Transmission

Message	Action
Transmission Limited Function See Manual	The transmission has limited functionality. See an authorized dealer.
Transmission Not in Park	Displays as a reminder to shift into park. This message may also display after reconnecting or recharging the battery until you cycle the ignition on. See <b>Changing the 12V Battery</b> (page 167).
Transmission Not in Park. Park Engages in xx:xx	Stay in neutral mode is engaged. Transmission automatically shifts into park when timer reaches zero.
Transmission Adjusted	Displays when the transmission has adjusted the shift strategy.
Transmission Adapt-Mode	Displays when the transmission is adjusting the shift strategy.
Transmission Indicat-Mode Lockup On	Displays when the transmission shift selector is locked and unable to select gears.
Transmission Indicat-Mode Lockup Off	Displays when the transmission shift selector is unlocked and free to select gears.
Invalid Gear Selection	Displays if you cannot shift to the selected gear because of current vehicle conditions.
Stay in Neutral Mode Engaged	Displays when neutral hold is active. See <b>Automatic Transmission</b> (page 105).
Park will engage at Low Speed	Displays if the vehicle will shift to park (P) after it reaches a certain speed or slower.
Select M to Confirm Stay in Neutral Mode	Displays when you need to press manual (M) to enter neutral hold. See <b>Automatic Transmission</b> (page 105).
SHIFT SYS FAULT Confirm Park Brake Apply Before Exiting the Vehicle	Displays when there is a fault with the transmission gear selection. See an authorized dealer.
Transmission Clutch Fluid Over Temperature	The transmission clutch fluid temperature is excessively high.

# Climate Control

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL

### Standard Measurement



E290061

### Metric Measurement



E34389

### Directing the Airflow

Use the control to direct the airflow.



Direct airflow to the windshield air vents and de-mister.



Direct airflow to the windshield air vents and the footwell air vents.



Direct airflow to the footwell air vents.



Direct airflow to the instrument panel air vents and the footwell air vents.



Direct airflow to the instrument panel air vents.

### Setting the Blower Motor Speed



Turn the control to adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

### Setting the Temperature

Turn the control to set the temperature.

### Switching Auto Mode On and Off



Press and release the button to switch on automatic operation, then select your preferred temperature and air distribution.

The system adjusts the blower motor speed, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air to reach and maintain the temperature you have set.

### Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off



Press and release the button.

Use air conditioning with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

### Switching Recirculated Air On and Off



Press and release the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air.

# Climate Control

---

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior, when used with **A/C**, and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

## HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

### General Hints

**Note:** Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

**Note:** You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

**Note:** To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.

**Note:** Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

**Note:** Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

### Automatic Climate Control

**Note:** Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary.

**Note:** The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.

**Note:** For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.

**Note:** If you select **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.

**Note:** If you select **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

### Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press and release **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

### Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press and release **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

### Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press and release **AUTO**.
2. Press and release **A/C** if is not lit.
3. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

**Note:** To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

### Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press and release **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

### Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Direct airflow to the windshield air vents and de-mister.



# Climate Control

---

2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

## Defogging the Windshield in Cold Weather

1. Adjust the blower motor to the highest setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.
3. Direct airflow to the windshield air vents and de-mister.

**Note:** *You can also use this setting to clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.*

## CABIN AIR FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a cabin air filter, which gives you and your passenger the following benefits:

- It improves your driving comfort by reducing particle concentration.
- It improves the interior compartment cleanliness.
- It protects the climate control components from particle deposits.

You can locate the cabin air filter under the front hood.

**Note:** *Make sure you have a cabin air filter installed at all times. This prevents foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.*

Replace the filter at regular intervals. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 263).

For additional cabin air filter information, or to replace the filter, see a qualified technician.

# Seats

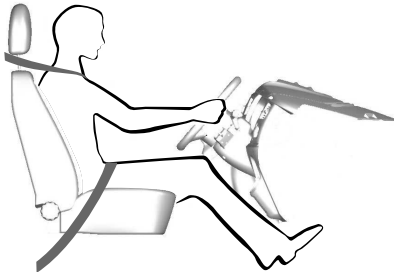
## SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



**WARNING:** Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.



**WARNING:** Do not place any objects on a folded seat. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious personal injury.



E68595

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 in (25 cm) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

## MANUAL SEATS



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver seat when your vehicle is moving.

# Seats

---



E224746

To adjust the seatback:

1. Lean forward and pull the lever up.
2. With the seatback released, lean back to a comfortable position while holding the lever up.
3. Release the lever and let the seat lock into position.

# Auxiliary Power Points

---

## 12 V DC Power Point



**WARNING:** Incorrect use of the power points can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

**Note:** *When you switch the ignition on, you can use the center console power point to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 12.5 A.*

**Note:** *You can only use the center floor console power point with the ignition on.*

**Note:** *You can use the rear hatch power point with the ignition off.*

**Note:** *Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug.*

**Note:** *Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 V DC 180 watts or a fuse may blow.*

**Note:** *Always keep the power point cap closed when not in use.*

Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This damages the power point and the fuse may trip.

Run the vehicle for full capacity use of the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is not running.

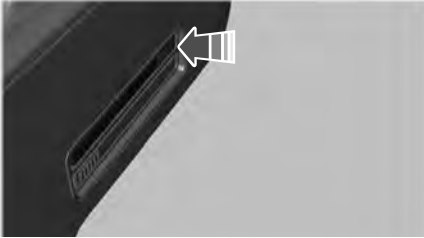
## Location

The power points are on the right side of the center floor console and in the rear hatch.

# Storage Compartments

## CUP HOLDERS

**Note:** Do not place hot drinks in the cup holders when your vehicle is moving.



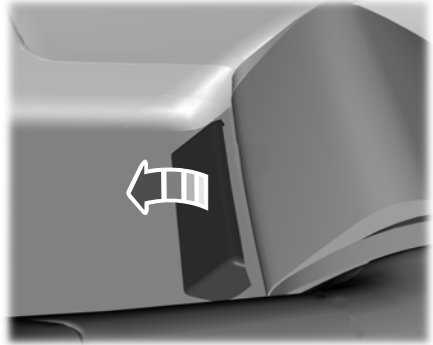
E247860

Press the button to access the cup holders. The cup holders extend independently.

## MAP POCKETS

You can access the storage pockets on the back of the front seats by folding the seats forward.

## UNDER SEAT STORAGE



E227957

1. Press the center of the door to release the latch.
2. Pull the door down to access the storage bin.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## GENERAL INFORMATION



**WARNING:** Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.



**WARNING:** Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



**WARNING:** Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 mi (8 km) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

## KEYLESS STARTING

**Note:** *The keyless starting system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as cellular phones.*

**Note:** *A valid key must be located inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.*

## Ignition Modes



E243665

The keyless starting system has three modes:

**Off:** Turns the ignition off.

- Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once when the ignition is in the on mode, or when the engine is running but the vehicle is not moving.

**On:** All electrical circuits are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

- Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once.

**Start:** Starts the engine.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

- Press the brake pedal and then press the button for any length of time.

## STEERING WHEEL LOCK

The steering wheel locks automatically when you leave your vehicle and take the intelligent access key with you. The steering wheel unlocks automatically when you enter your vehicle with the intelligent access key.

**Note:** You may need to turn the steering wheel left or right if the wheel does not unlock completely. This may happen in certain situations, such as parking your vehicle on a steep grade.

## STARTING THE ENGINE

When you start the engine, the idle speed increases. This helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

**Note:** You can crank the engine for a total of 60 seconds, without the engine starting, before the starting system temporarily disables. The 60 seconds does not have to be all at once. For example, you can crank the engine three times for 20 seconds each, without the engine starting, to reach the 60 second time limit. If you exceed the cranking time, you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes. After 15 minutes, you have a 15 second time limit to crank the engine. You need to wait 60 minutes before you crank the engine again for 60 seconds.

Before starting the engine, check the following:

- Make sure all occupants fasten their seatbelts.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.

- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Move the transmission selector into park (P).

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

**Note:** You must have your intelligent access key in the vehicle in order to shift the transmission out of park (P).



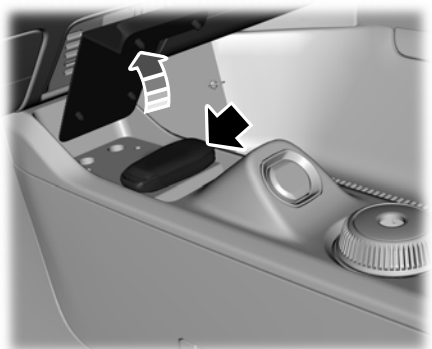
E24396

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Press the Engine START/STOP button.

The system does not function if:

- The key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

If you are unable to start the engine, do the following:



E228717

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

1. Place the key fob under the rubber mat in front of the Engine START/STOP button.
2. With the key in this position, press the brake pedal and then the Engine START/STOP button to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

**Note:** *If the vehicle fails to start, replace the key fob battery.*

## Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart the engine within 20 seconds of switching it off, even if a valid key is not present.

Within 20 seconds of switching the engine off, press the brake pedal and press the START/STOP button. After 20 seconds have expired, you can no longer restart the engine without the key present inside your vehicle.

Once the engine has started, it remains running until you press the START/STOP button, even if the system does not detect a valid key. If you open and close a door while the engine is running, the system searches for a valid key. You cannot restart the engine if the system does not detect a valid key within 20 seconds.

## Failure to Start

If you cannot start the engine after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow this procedure:


1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Move the transmission selector to the park (P) position.
3. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
4. Press the START/STOP button once.

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Move the transmission selector to the park (P) position.
2. Press the START/STOP button once.
3. Apply the parking brake.

**Note:** *This switches off the ignition, all electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators.*

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving



**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

1. Move the transmission selector to the neutral position and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. When your vehicle has stopped, park (P) will engage automatically.
3. Press and hold the START/STOP button for one second, or press it three times within two seconds.
4. Apply the parking brake.



# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

## Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

## Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 1 in (2.5 cm).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

# Fuel and Refueling

## SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



**WARNING:** Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Follow these guidelines when refueling:

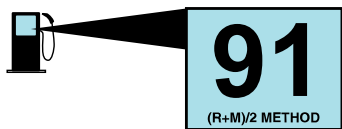
- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always switch the engine off before refueling.

- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

# Fuel and Refueling

## FUEL QUALITY

### Choosing the Right Fuel



E185193

Use only premium unleaded gasoline with a minimum pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 91. For optimal performance, use premium unleaded gasoline with an octane rating of 93 or higher.

The use of the correct fuel is an important part of the proper maintenance of your vehicle, and a condition of the vehicle Warranty. For this vehicle, the use of gasoline with an octane level of 91 or higher is required. The use of gasoline with an octane rating lower than 91 will invalidate the vehicle Warranty. It can degrade vehicle performance and lead to severe mechanical damage.

We recommend Top Tier detergent gasolines, where available, to help minimize engine deposits and maintain optimal vehicle and engine performance. For additional information, refer to [www.toptiergas.com](http://www.toptiergas.com).

**Note:** *Use of any fuel other than those recommended can impair the emission control system and cause a loss of vehicle performance.*

Do not use:

- Diesel fuel.
- Fuels containing kerosene or paraffin.
- Fuel containing more than 15% ethanol or E85 fuel.
- Fuels containing methanol.

- Fuels containing metallic-based additives, including manganese-based compounds.
- Fuels containing the octane booster additive, methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT).
- Leaded fuel (using leaded fuel is prohibited by law).

The use of fuels with metallic compounds such as methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (commonly known as MMT), which is a manganese-based fuel additive, will impair engine performance and affect the emission control system.

Do not be concerned if the engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if it knocks heavily under most driving conditions while you are using fuel with the recommended octane rating, contact an authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

## FUEL FILLER FUNNEL LOCATION

The fuel filler funnel is located in the storage compartment under the rear hatch.

## RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Running out of fuel can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If your vehicle runs out of fuel:

- Add a minimum of 1.3 gal (5 L) of fuel to restart the engine.
- You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

# Fuel and Refueling

**Note:** If your vehicle is on a steep slope, more fuel may be required.

## Filling a Portable Fuel Container



**WARNING:** Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

## Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container



**WARNING:** Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.



**WARNING:** Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.



**WARNING:** Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 96).

**Note:** Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.



E157452

3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

# Fuel and Refueling

**Note:** Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

## REFUELING



**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



**WARNING:** Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.



**WARNING:** Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.



**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.



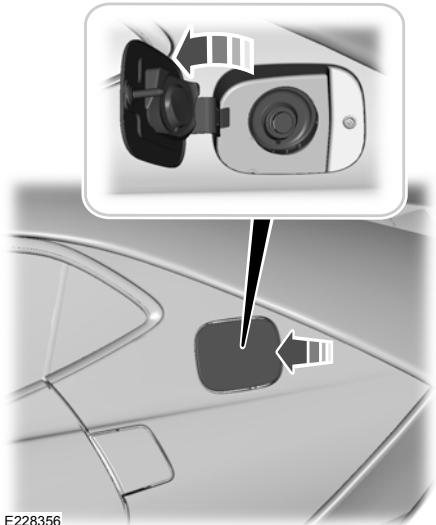
**WARNING:** Wait at least 10 seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.



**WARNING:** Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

**Note:** Your vehicle does not have a fuel filler cap.

**Note:** You must unlock your vehicle before opening and closing the fuel tank filler door.

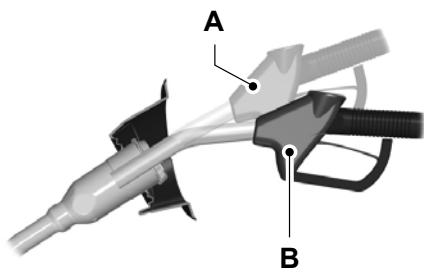


1. Fully open the fuel tank filler door until it engages.

**Note:** When you insert the correct size fuel pump nozzle a spring loaded inhibitor will open.

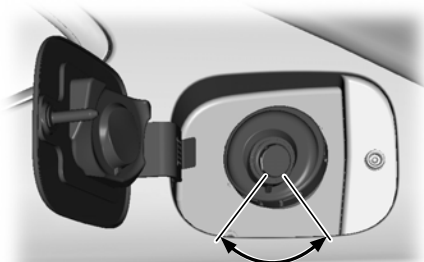
2. Insert the fuel pump and keep it resting on the cover of the fuel tank filler pipe opening.

# Fuel and Refueling



E139203

3. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



E228357

4. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



E119081

5. Slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and then slowly remove it.
6. Fully close the fuel tank filler door.

**Note:** Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked immediately.

## System Warnings (If Equipped)

If the fuel filler inlet does not fully close a warning message appears in the information display.

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off.
2. Shift into park (P) or neutral (N). Apply the parking brake.
3. Fully open the fuel filler door.
4. Check the fuel filler inlet and the area around it for any items or debris that may be obstructing its movement.
5. Fully insert a fuel pump nozzle or the fuel filler funnel provided with your vehicle into the fuel filler inlet. This action should dislodge any debris that may be preventing the fuel filler inlet from fully closing.
6. Fully close the fuel filler door.

**Note:** If this action corrects the problem the message may not immediately reset. If the message remains and a warning lamp illuminates, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## FUEL CONSUMPTION

The advertised capacity is the indicated capacity and the empty reserve combined. Indicated capacity is the difference in the amount of fuel in the fuel tank and when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 207).

**Note:** The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.

# Fuel and Refueling

---

**Note:** *When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity due to the empty reserve still present in the fuel tank.*

## Filling the Fuel Tank

For consistent results when refueling:

- Always switch the ignition off before refueling. If you leave the engine running, you will get an inaccurate reading.
- Use the same fill rate each time you fill the tank.

Results are most accurate when the filling method is consistent.

## Calculating Fuel Economy

Do not measure fuel economy during the first 1,000 mi (1,600 km) of driving (this is your engine's break-in period). A more accurate measurement is obtained after 2,000 mi (3,200 km) to 3,000 mi (4,800 km). Also, fuel expense, frequency of fill ups or fuel gauge readings are not accurate ways to measure fuel economy.

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading.
2. Each time you fill the fuel tank, record the amount of fuel added.
3. After at least three fill ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.
4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.
5. To calculate L/100 km (liters per 100 kilometers) fuel consumption, multiply the liters used by 100, then divide by kilometers traveled. To calculate MPG (miles per gallon) fuel consumption, divide miles traveled by gallons used.

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or highway). This provides an accurate estimate of your vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions.

## Conditions

- Heavily loading your vehicle reduces fuel economy.
- Carrying unnecessary weight in your vehicle may reduce fuel economy.
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle may reduce fuel economy.
- Using fuel blended with alcohol may lower fuel economy.
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures.
- Fuel economy may decrease when driving short distances.
- You will get better fuel economy when driving on flat terrain than when driving on hilly terrain.

# Engine Emission Control

## EMISSION LAW



**WARNING:** Do not remove or alter the original equipment floor covering or insulation between it and the metal floor of the vehicle. The floor covering and insulation protect occupants of the vehicle from the engine and exhaust system heat and noise. On vehicles with no original equipment floor covering insulation, do not carry passengers in a manner that permits prolonged skin contact with the metal floor. Failure to follow these instructions may result in fire or personal injury.

U.S. federal laws and certain state laws prohibit removing or rendering inoperative emission control system components. Similar federal or provincial laws may apply in Canada. We do not approve of any vehicle modification without first determining applicable laws.



Tampering with emissions control systems including related sensors or the Diesel

Exhaust Fluid system can result in reduced engine power and the illumination of the service engine soon light.

## Tampering With a Noise Control System

Federal laws prohibit the following acts:

- Removal or rendering inoperative by any person other than for purposes of maintenance.
- Repair or replacement of any device or element of the design incorporated into a new vehicle for the purpose of noise control prior to its sale or delivery to the ultimate purchaser or while it is in use.
- The use of the vehicle after any person removes or renders inoperative any device or element of the design.

The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency may presume to constitute tampering as follows:

- Removal of hood blanket, fender apron absorbers, fender apron barriers, underbody noise shields or acoustically absorptive material.
- Tampering or rendering inoperative the engine speed governor, to allow engine speed to exceed manufacturer specifications.

If the engine does not start, runs rough, experiences a decrease in engine performance, experiences excess fuel consumption or produces excessive exhaust smoke, check for the following:

- A plugged or disconnected air inlet system hose.
- A plugged engine air filter element.
- Water in the fuel filter and water separator.
- A clogged fuel filter.
- Contaminated fuel.
- Air in the fuel system, due to loose connections.
- An open or pinched sensor hose.
- Incorrect engine oil level.



# Engine Emission Control

- Incorrect fuel for climatic conditions.
- Incorrect engine oil viscosity for climactic conditions.

**Note:** *Some vehicles have a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.*

**Note:** *If these checks do not help you correct the concern, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

## Noise Emissions Warranty, Prohibited Tampering Acts and Maintenance

On January 1, 1978, Federal regulation became effective governing the noise emission on trucks over 10,000 lb (4,536 kg) Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The preceding statements concerning prohibited tampering acts and maintenance, and the noise warranty found in the Warranty Guide, are applicable to complete chassis cabs over 10,000 lb (4,536 kg) GVWR.

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER



**WARNING:** Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



**WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle has various emission control components and a catalytic converter that enables it to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards.

To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 136).
- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

# Engine Emission Control

**Note:** *Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

The scheduled maintenance items listed in scheduled maintenance information are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

If you use anything other than Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized parts for maintenance replacements or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.

Illumination of the service engine soon indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

An improperly operating or damaged exhaust system may allow exhaust to enter the vehicle. Have a damaged or improperly operating exhaust system inspected and repaired immediately.

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement.

Please consult your warranty information for complete details.

## On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle has a computer known as the on-board diagnostics system (OBD-II) that monitors the engine's emission control system. The system protects the environment by making sure that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists a service technician in properly servicing your vehicle.



When the service engine soon indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the service engine soon indicator to illuminate. Examples are:

1. Your vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
2. Poor fuel quality or water in the fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
3. The fuel fill inlet may not have closed properly. See **Refueling** (page 98).
4. Driving through deep water—the electrical system may be wet.

You can correct these temporary malfunctions by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, properly closing the fuel fill inlet or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the service engine soon indicator should stay off the next time you start the engine. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city and highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

# Engine Emission Control

If the service engine soon indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the service engine soon indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness and lead to more costly repairs.

## Readiness for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) Testing

Some state and provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration.



If the service engine soon indicator is on or the bulb does not work, your vehicle may need service. See On-Board Diagnostics.

Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the service engine soon indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing.

If the vehicle's engine or transmission has just been serviced, or the battery has recently run down or been replaced, the OBD-II system may indicate that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, turn the ignition key to the on position for 15 seconds without cranking the engine. If the service engine soon indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the service engine soon indicator stays on solid, it means that your vehicle is ready for I/M testing.

The OBD-II system checks the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days.

If the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, you can perform the following driving cycle consisting of mixed city and highway driving:

1. 15 minutes of steady driving on an expressway or highway followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods.
2. Allow your vehicle to sit for at least eight hours with the ignition off. Then, start the vehicle and complete the above driving cycle. The vehicle must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the vehicle until the above driving cycle is complete.

If the vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, you need to repeat the above driving cycle.

# Transmission

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



**WARNING:** Always fully apply the parking brake. Make sure you shift into park (P) for vehicles with an automatic transmission. Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.



**WARNING:** Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit engine performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

Your Ford GT vehicle is equipped with a 7-speed, dual clutch automatic transmission. In drive (D), the transmission shifts automatically, or you can shift with the paddle shifters. In manual mode, you must shift the transmission with the paddle shifters.

## Understanding the Positions of Your Automatic Transmission



E227917

1. Fully press down the brake pedal.
2. Move the selector to the desired gear.

### Park (P)

With the transmission in park (P), your vehicle locks the transmission and prevents the wheels from turning. Always come to a complete stop before putting your vehicle into park (P).

### Automatic Return to Park

**Note:** This feature does not operate when your vehicle is in Stay in Neutral mode.

Your vehicle has a feature that automatically shifts your vehicle into park (P) when any of the following conditions occur:

- You turn the vehicle off.
- You open the driver's door with your seatbelt unlatched.
- Your seatbelt is unlatched when the driver's door is open.

# Transmission

---

If you turn your vehicle off when moving, your vehicle first shifts into neutral (N) until it slows down enough to shift into park (P) automatically.

**Note:** *If you have waited an extended period of time (2-15 minutes) before starting your vehicle, unlatching your seatbelt causes this feature to activate, even with the driver's door closed.*

**Note:** *This feature may not work properly if the door ajar switch is malfunctioning. If your door ajar indicator does not illuminate when you open the driver's door or the indicator illuminates with the driver's door closed, see your authorized dealer.*

## Reverse (R)

With the selector in reverse (R), your vehicle moves backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of reverse (R).

## Neutral (N)

With the selector in neutral (N), your vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down when in this position.

## Stay in Neutral Mode

Stay in Neutral mode allows your vehicle to stay in neutral when you exit your vehicle. Your vehicle must be stationary to enter this mode.

To enter Stay in Neutral mode:

- With the engine running,
- Release the parking brake if applied, press down the brake pedal and press the parking brake release switch on the center console.
- Press down the brake pedal and move the transmission selector to neutral (N).
- A message appears in your display screen.

- Press the manual (M) button to enter Stay in Neutral mode.
- Another message appears in your display screen confirming Neutral mode is engaged.
- Stay in Neutral mode remains engaged as long as the engine is running. If the engine is turned off, a 30 minute timer starts and appears in your display screen.

To exit Stay in Neutral mode, press down the brake pedal and select a different gear.

## Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy. In the drive (D) position, the transmission automatically shifts through gears one through seven.

## Manual (M)

To select manual (M), place the transmission selector in drive (D) and press "M" button in the middle of the selector. Once you select manual (M), you must use the paddle shifters to upshift or downshift the transmission.

To exit manual (M) and return to drive (D), press the "M" button again.

## SelectShift™ Automatic Transmission

Your vehicle is equipped with a SelectShift Automatic transmission, which gives you the ability to change gears up or down as desired.

# Transmission

In order to prevent the engine from running at too low an RPM, which may cause it to stall, SelectShift still automatically makes some downshifts if it has determined that you have not downshifted in time. Although SelectShift makes some downshifts for you, it still allows you to downshift at any time as long as SelectShift determines that no damage occurs to the engine from over-revving.

**Note:** *Engine damage may occur if you maintain excessive engine revving without shifting.*

SelectShift does not automatically upshift, even if the engine is approaching the RPM limit. It must be shifted manually by use of the upshift (+) paddle. When using Manual (M) shift mode, pay attention to the shift indicator on the top rim of the steering wheel and the RPM indicator in the instrument cluster.

## Use the paddles on the steering wheel to shift.

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (-) to downshift.



E243776

SelectShift in drive (D):

- Provides a temporary manual mode for performing more demanding maneuvers where extra control of gear selection is required (for example, when overtaking). This mode holds a selected gear for a temporary period of time dependent on driver inputs (for example, steering or accelerator pedal input).

SelectShift in manual (M):

- Provides a permanent manual gear selection where full control of gear selection is required.

The instrument cluster displays your currently selected gear. If a gear is requested but not available due to vehicle conditions (low speed, too high engine speed for requested gear selection), the current gear flashes two times.

Upshift to the recommended shift speeds according to this following chart:

<b>Upshifts When Accelerating (Recommended for Best Fuel Economy)</b>	
Shift from:	
1 - 2	15 mph (24 km/h)
2 - 3	25 mph (40 km/h)
3 - 4	40 mph (64 km/h)
4 - 5	45 mph (72 km/h)
5 - 6	50 mph (80 km/h)
6 - 7	55 mph (88 km/h)

## Performance Shift Indicator

There are LEDs at the top of the steering wheel rim that illuminate in sequence to indicate specific engine RPM. If you reach the maximum engine speed, all LEDs flash red.

# Transmission

Use the following chart to help determine when to manually shift:

LED Color	Gear 1-3 (RPM)	Gear 4-7 (RPM)
Green 1	5800	6100
Green 2	5900	6200
Green 3	6000	6300
Green 4	6100	6400
Green 5	6200	6500
Green 6	6300	6600
Red 1	6400	6700
Red 2	6500	6750
Red 3	6600	6800
Blue 1	6700	6850
Blue 2	6800	6900
Blue 3	6900	6950
Flashing Red	7000	7000

## Brake-Shift Interlock



**WARNING:** When doing this procedure, you need to take the transmission out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.



**WARNING:** If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** You should only use this procedure in the event that your vehicle is disabled and you cannot start the engine in order to shift into Neutral (N) to move it. Use the provided Transmission Park Override tool to release the transmission park mechanism and allow the rear tires to roll freely.

**Note:** See your authorized dealer as soon as this procedure is used.

**Note:** Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.

Your vehicle is equipped with a brake-shift interlock feature that prevents moving the selector from park (P) when the ignition is in the on position and the brake pedal is not pressed.

If you cannot move the selector out of park (P) position with the ignition in the on position and the brake pedal pressed, a malfunction may have occurred. It is possible that a fuse has blown or your vehicle's brake lamps are not operating properly. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 145).

If the fuse is good and the brake lamps are functioning, then there may be a fault in the system. To roll the car or to allow the vehicle to be transported for repair, use the following procedure to place the transmission into neutral (N) manually. To place the transmission into neutral (N) in the event of a battery failure, or other electrical fault that prevents the shifter from working, use this procedure.

# Transmission

## Manually Placing the Transmission in Park Override

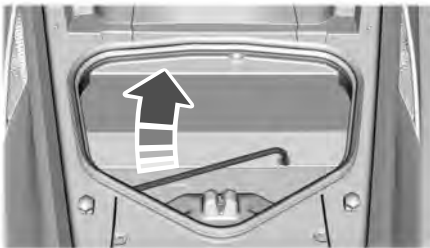
The transmission park override tool is in the storage compartment under the rear hatch.

It requires two people to perform this procedure properly. One person seated in the driver's seat, that must remain in control of vehicle steering, brakes and parking brake at all times. For instructions on releasing the parking brake in the event of a loss of vehicle battery power. See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 111). If you do not have battery power, chock the wheels so the car does not roll forward or backward when not intended.



E241995

1. Remove the plug from the bottom right side of the storage compartment to access the park override shaft.



E249885

2. Insert the park override tool onto the shaft. Hold the tool in the rotated position to maintain park override when you move the vehicle.
3. To return the transmission to normal park function, remove the park override tool.
4. Re-install the plug and return the tool to the storage position.

## If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, reducing the stability and traction control may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin. You can reduce the stability and traction control by switching to Sport mode and adjusting the AdvanceTrac setting. See **Using Stability Control** (page 116).



# Brakes

## GENERAL INFORMATION

**Note:** Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If your vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, have it checked by an authorized dealer.


**Note:** Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning the Wheels** (page 180).

 See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 69).

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times after washing the car.

### Carbon Ceramic Brake Discs

Your vehicle has carbon ceramic brake discs. When cleaning your wheels and tires, use care not to get any wheel cleaner or tire dressing on the brake discs.

 This lamp illuminates when your brakes pads are worn and require replacement. See an authorized dealer for replacement.

### Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe

stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interferences. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

### Brake Assist

Brake assist detects when you brake rapidly by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal, and can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

### Anti-lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.



This lamp momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the system may be disabled. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If the anti-lock brake system is disabled, normal braking is still effective.



If the brake warning lamp remains illuminated after you release the parking brake, have the system checked by an authorized dealer. This lamp illuminates momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If the brake warning lamp remains illuminated after you release the parking brake, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

# Brakes

## HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

**Note:** *If the system activates, the brake pedal may pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.*

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE



**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake and leave your vehicle with the transmission in park (P).

The electric parking brake operates with the switch in the center console.

**Note:** *When you apply the electric parking brake in certain conditions, for example, on a steep hill, the electric parking brake may reapply the brakes within three to ten minutes.*

**Note:** *You may notice various noises when you apply and release the electric parking brake. This is normal and no cause for concern.*

## Applying the Electric Parking brake



**WARNING:** Applying the electric parking brake while moving will result in the engagement of the anti-lock braking system. Do not use the electric parking brake system when the vehicle is moving unless the normal brake system is unable to stop the vehicle.



**WARNING:** With the exception of emergency conditions (for example, the brake pedal is broken or is blocked), do not apply the electric parking brake while the vehicle is moving. On bends, or poor road surfaces or weather conditions, emergency braking can cause the vehicle to skid out of control or off the road.

**Note:** *The brake system warning lamp lights during an electric parking brake apply. If the brake system warning lamp flashes and continues to flash, there could be a problem with your electric parking brake. See your authorized dealer.*

**Note:** *The brake system warning lamp illuminates for ten seconds if you switch the ignition off after you apply the electric parking brake, or you apply the electric parking brake after you switch the ignition off.*

**Note:** *When you switch the engine off, the electric parking brake applies.*

# Brakes



E227395

Pull the switch up to apply the electric parking brake.

The brake system warning lamp flashes for about two seconds and then illuminates to confirm that you have applied the electric parking brake. See **Information Displays** (page 74).

If you apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, the brake system warning lamp illuminates and a warning chime sounds. See **Information Displays** (page 74).

If your vehicle speed is above 4 mph (6 km/h), the braking force is applied as long as you pull the switch. Releasing or pressing the switch or pressing the accelerator pedal will stop the braking force.

## Releasing the Electric Parking Brake



E227515

You can release the electric parking brake either manually by pressing the switch or automatically by pressing the accelerator pedal.

### Manual release



**WARNING:** If the brake system warning light remains illuminated or flashes for more than four seconds after you have released the parking brake, there could be a problem with your braking system. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

You can manually release the electric parking brake by:

1. Switching the ignition on.
2. Pressing the brake pedal.
3. Pressing the electric parking brake switch.

When you release the electric parking brake, the brake system warning lamp turns off.

# Brakes

## Automatic release - drive away release

Your vehicle automatically releases the parking brake if all of the following conditions exist:

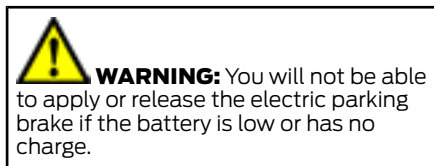
- You close the driver door.
- You put on your seatbelt.
- You press the accelerator pedal.
- The system does not detect any faults in the parking brake system.

**Note:** *If the electric parking brake warning lamp stays illuminated, the electric parking brake will not automatically release. You must release the electric parking brake using the electric parking brake switch.*

The brake system warning lamp turns off to confirm that you released the electric parking brake.

**Note:** *The electric parking brake drive away release makes starting on a hill easier. This feature releases the parking brake automatically when the vehicle has sufficient drive force to move up the hill. To assure drive away release when starting uphill, press the accelerator pedal quickly.*

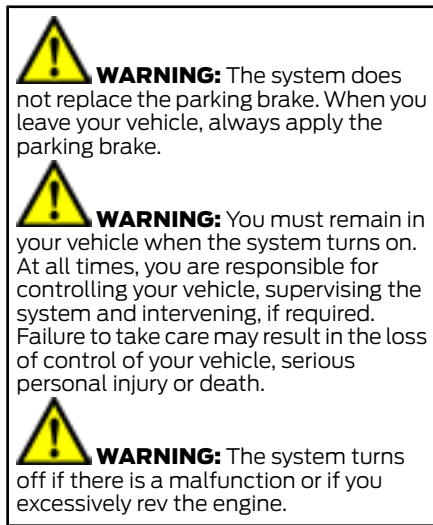
## Battery With No Charge



If the battery is low or has no charge, use jumper cables and a booster battery.

After connecting the booster battery, you should be able to apply or release the electric parking brake.

## HILL START ASSIST



The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, your vehicle remains stationary on the slope for two to three seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows you time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release automatically once the engine develops sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. The system activates automatically on any slope that causes significant vehicle rollback.

**Note:** *There is no warning lamp to indicate the system is either on or off.*

## Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed.

# Brakes

---

2. If the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope, the system activates automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle will remain on the slope without rolling away for about two or three seconds. This hold time automatically extends if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The brakes release automatically.

# Stability Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION



**WARNING:** Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the electronic stability control system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the electronic stability control sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



**WARNING:** Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your electronic stability control system activates, SLOW DOWN.



**WARNING:** The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily if the system detects a failure. Make sure you did not manually disable the traction control system using the information display controls or the switch. If the stability control and traction control light is still illuminating steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The stability and traction control systems help you to avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction. The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If a fault occurs in either the stability control or the traction control system, you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily.
- The stability control and traction control systems do not enhance your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels.

If a driving condition activates either the stability control or the traction control system you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light flashes.
- Your vehicle slows down.
- Reduced engine power.
- A vibration in the brake pedal.

# Stability Control

- The brake pedal is stiffer than usual.
- If the driving condition is severe and your foot is not on the brake, the brake pedal may move as the system applies higher brake force.

The stability and traction control systems have several features built into it to help you maintain control of your vehicle:

## AdvanceTrac™ Electronic Stability Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent skids or lateral slides by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing engine power.

## Traction Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels by detecting and controlling wheel spin. Traction control settings on your vehicle are integrated into the AdvanceTrac Stability Control system.

**The following chart describes how much you can change the functionality of stability control and traction control in each Drive Mode:**

Drive Mode	Available Setting(s)	Operation	How to Select
Normal, Wet and V-Max.	On.	Normal.	No input required.
Sport and Track.	On.	Normal.	No input required.
	Performance.	Stability control is reduced, traction control remains on.	Press the ESC button once.
	Performance+.	Stability control is reduced, traction control is disabled.	Press the ESC button twice within 0.5 seconds.
	Off.	Stability and traction control is disabled.	Press the ESC button for 5 seconds.

## USING STABILITY CONTROL

### AdvanceTrac™ Electronic Stability Control

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on. You can also use the stability control button on the center console to adjust the operation of the AdvanceTrac stability control system.

AdvanceTrac electronic stability control is disabled when the transmission is in reverse (R).

The amount of change you can make to the AdvanceTrac stability control system depends on the Drive Mode you have selected.

# Stability Control

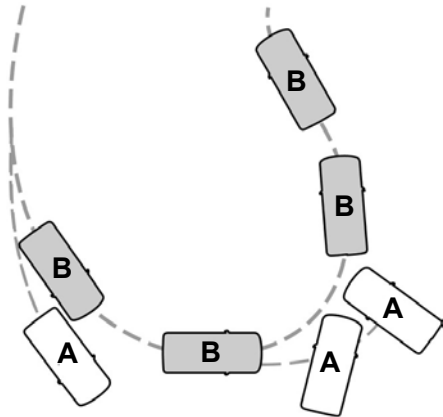
If the stability or traction control system has been reduced or disabled, press the stability and traction control button once to return to the normal on setting.

**Note:** Do not use Track or V-Max modes on public roadways.

**Note:** Messages appear in the instrument cluster when you make changes to the AdvanceTrac system.

**Note:** When you start your vehicle, AdvanceTrac turns on for all drive modes. It does not remember the previous setting.

## Stability Control



E72903

- A Vehicle without stability control skidding off its intended route.
- B Vehicle with stability control maintaining control on a slippery surface.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

## System Indicator Lights and Messages



The stability and traction control light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and flashes:

- When a driving condition activates either of the systems.
- If a problem occurs in either of the systems.



The stability and traction control off light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and stays on when you adjust the operation of the AdvanceTrac stability control system. The amount of change you can make to the AdvanceTrac stability control system depends on the drive mode you have selected. The chart found earlier in this section shows how much you can change the stability control and traction control for each drive mode.



# Parking Aids

## REAR VIEW CAMERA



**WARNING:** The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



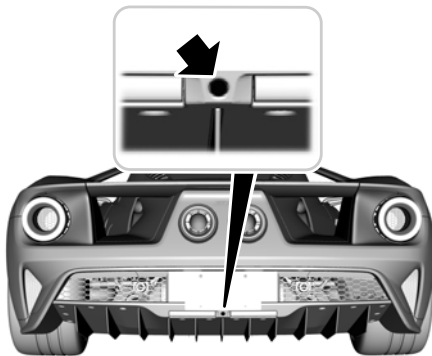
**WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



**WARNING:** Use caution when turning camera features on or off when the transmission is not in park (P). Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

The rear view camera system provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

During operation, lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's proximity to objects behind your vehicle.



E236446

The camera is located below the license plate.

## Using the Rear View Camera System

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you place the transmission in reverse (R).

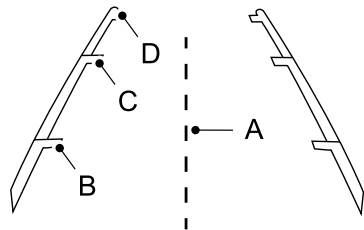
The system uses fixed guidelines to help you see what is behind your vehicle. Fixed guidelines show the path your vehicle is moving while reversing in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space.

The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if the reverse lamps are not operating.
- Mud, water or debris obstructs the camera's view. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The camera is misaligned due to damage to the rear of your vehicle.

## Camera Guidelines

**Note:** Fixed guidelines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).



E243771

- A Centerline
- B Fixed guideline: Red Zone

# Parking Aids

---

- C Fixed guideline: Yellow zone
- D Fixed guideline: Green zone

Always use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of the vehicle.

## Manual Zoom



**WARNING:** When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

**Note:** *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

Selectable settings for this feature are Zoom in (+) and Zoom out (-). Press the symbol in the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is Zoom OFF.

This feature allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R). When the transmission shifts out of reverse (R), the feature automatically turns off and must be reset when it is used again.

## Rear Camera Delay

You can select to have the rear camera continue to display after shifting from reverse (R). See **Settings** (page 247).

# Cruise Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when your vehicle speed is greater than 20 mph (30 km/h).

## USING CRUISE CONTROL



**WARNING:** Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



**WARNING:** When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

**Note:** Cruise control disengages if the vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below the set speed when driving uphill.



E227119

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

## Switching Cruise Control On

Press **ON**.



The indicator appears in the information display.

## Setting the Cruise Speed

1. Drive to desired speed.
2. Toggle **SET+** or **SET-**.
3. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

**Note:** The indicator changes color.

## Changing the Set Speed

**Note:** If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed will not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.

- Toggle **SET+** or **SET-** to change the set speed in small increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Toggle **SET+** or **SET-**.
- Toggle and hold **SET+** or **SET-**. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.

## Canceling the Set Speed

Press **CAN** or tap the brake pedal. The set speed does not erase.

## Resuming the Set Speed

Press **RES**.

## Switching Cruise Control Off

**Note:** You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.

Press **OFF** when the system is in standby mode, or switch the ignition off.

# Driving Aids

## STEERING

To help prevent damage to the power steering system:

- Never hold the steering wheel at its furthest turning points (until it stops) for more than three to five seconds when the engine is running.
- Do not operate the vehicle with a low hydraulic fluid level. See **Power Steering Fluid Check** (page 166).
- Some noise is normal during operation. If excessive, check for low hydraulic fluid level before seeking service by your dealer.
- Heavy or uneven efforts may be caused by low hydraulic fluid. Check for low hydraulic fluid level before seeking service by your dealer.
- Do not over fill the hydraulic fluid as this may result in leaks from the reservoir. See **Power Steering Fluid Check** (page 166).

If the power steering system breaks down (or if the engine is off), you can manually steer the vehicle, but it takes more effort.

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- An improperly inflated tire.
- Uneven tire wear.
- Loose or worn suspension components.
- Loose or worn steering components.
- Improper vehicle alignment.

A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander or pull.

## DRIVE MODE CONTROL

### Drive Mode Selection

Your vehicle has five selectable drive modes that deliver an enhanced driving experience through a suite of sophisticated electronic vehicle systems. In response to vehicle use and driving conditions, the selection of the drive mode optimizes handling and powertrain response. This provides a single location to control multiple systems performance settings.

### Using Selectable Drive Modes



E227821

To change the drive mode setting, use the rotary switch on the left side of the steering wheel.

**Note:** To engage or disengage Track or V-Max Drive Modes, the car must be at a stop with the transmission in park (P) and the engine running. This is necessary since the vehicle ride height changes. You can change between Normal, Wet and Sport Drive Modes while the vehicle is in motion.

# Driving Aids

---

## Modes:

- Normal (N) – Use for normal driving in dry conditions.
  - AdvanceTrac Stability Control is active and cannot be adjusted.
  - Ride height is set to High and suspension damping is set to Normal.
  - Comfort damping can be selected with the console switch.
  - Launch control is available.
  - Transmission automatic shift calibration is set to Normal.
  - Rear wing deploys at speeds above 90 mph (145 km/h) and retracts when the speed drops below 81 mph (130 km/h).
  - Air brake activates at speeds above 100 mph (161 km/h) when the brakes are applied with moderate force.
- Sport (S) – Use for sport driving in dry conditions.
  - AdvanceTrac Stability Control is active but can be adjusted by use of the Stability Control button on the console.
  - Ride height is set to High and suspension damping is set to Sport.
  - Comfort damping cannot be selected.
  - Launch control is available.
  - Transmission automatic shift calibration is set to Sport.
  - Turbocharger anti-lag calibration is active.
  - Rear wing deploys at speeds above 70 mph (113 km/h) and retracts when the speed drops below 45 mph (72 km/h).
  - Air brake activates at speeds above 75 mph (121 km/h) when the brakes are applied with moderate force.
- Wet (W) – Use for driving in wet conditions.
  - AdvanceTrac Stability Control is active and cannot be adjusted.
  - Ride height is set to High and suspension damping is set to Normal.
  - Comfort damping can be selected with the console switch.
  - Launch control is not available.
  - Transmission automatic shift calibration is set to Normal.
  - Rear wing deploys at speeds above 90 mph (145 km/h) and retracts when the speed drops below 81 mph (130 km/h).
  - Air brake activates at speeds above 100 mph (161 km/h) when the brakes are applied with moderate force.

## Driving Aids

---

- Track (T) – Optimized settings for track handling performance. The Track drive mode should only be used in a track environment, not on the street, due to the low ride height. This setting can only be selected while your vehicle is in park (P) with the engine running, and you need to confirm the selection.
  - AdvanceTrac Stability Control is active but can be adjusted by use of the Stability Control button on the console.
  - Ride height is set to Low and suspension damping is set to Track.
  - Comfort damping cannot be selected due to low ride height.
  - Launch control is available.
  - Transmission automatic shift calibration is set to Sport.
  - Turbocharger anti-lag calibration is active.
  - Rear wing deploys and remains deployed while in Track mode. When you change to another mode, the wing lowers once you start to drive your vehicle, not while it is stopped.
  - Air brake activates at speeds above 75 mph (121 km/h) when the brakes are applied with moderate force.
- V-Max (V) – Optimized settings for achieving maximum velocity (top speed). The V-Max mode should only be used in a controlled track environment, not on the street, due to the low ride height. This setting can only be selected while your vehicle is in park (P) with the engine running, and you need to confirm the selection.
  - AdvanceTrac Stability Control is active and cannot be adjusted.
  - Ride height is set to Low and suspension damping is set to Track.
  - Comfort damping cannot be selected due to low ride height.
  - Launch control is available.
  - Transmission automatic shift calibration is set to Sport.
  - Rear wing does not deploy.
  - Air brake activates at speeds above 110 mph (177 km/h) when the brakes are applied with moderate force.

**Note:** *When you shut down your vehicle in V-Max or Track mode, the vehicle returns to the Normal ride height. When you restart your vehicle in V-Max or Track mode, you need to re-acknowledge the drive mode selection in the information display in order for the drive mode to reactivate. If you do not make a selection, the vehicle returns to the previously selected drive mode.*

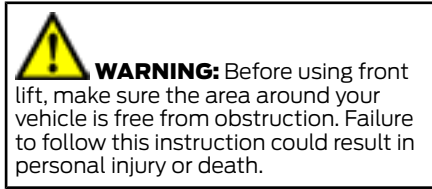
# Driving Aids

Drive Mode	Wet	Normal	Sport	Track	V-Max
Use	Driving in wet conditions	Normal driving in dry conditions	Sport driving in dry conditions	Optimized settings for track use (not for street use). Must be in park (P) to select this mode	Optimized settings for achieving maximum velocity (not for street use). Must be in park (P) to select this mode
AdvanceTrac Stability Control	Active, cannot be adjusted	Active, cannot be adjusted	Active, but can be adjusted	Active, but can be adjusted	Active, cannot be adjusted
Launch control	Not Available	Available			
Ride height and suspension damping	High with normal damping	High with normal damping	High with sport damping	Low with track damping	Low with track damping
Comfort damping	Available	Available	Not Available	Not Available	Not Available
Automatic transmission	Normal	Normal	Sport	Sport	Sport
Turbocharger anti-lag	Inactive	Inactive	Active	Active	Inactive
Rear wing	Active above 90 mph (145 km/h)	Active above 90 mph (145 km/h)	Active above 70 mph (113 km/h)	Always deployed	Does not deploy
Air brake	Activates above 100 mph (161 km/h) with moderate braking	Activates above 100 mph (161 km/h) with moderate braking	Activates above 75 mph (121 km/h) with moderate braking	Activates above 75 mph (121 km/h) with moderate braking	Activates above 110 mph (177 km/h) with moderate braking

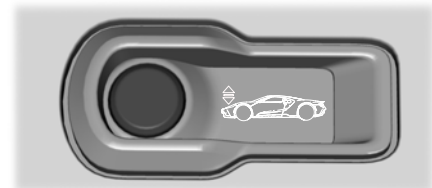
# Driving Aids

**Note:** Selectable driving modes has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system to ensure proper operation. If a selected mode is unavailable due to a system fault or change in gear shifter position, the selected mode defaults to Normal.

## Front Lift



Your vehicle has a front lift system to provide additional front end clearance when approaching a speed bump, driveway ramp or another similar surface where front end clearance could be a concern.



E229612

The front lift button is located on the center console. Press the button to lift the front end of your vehicle. Press the button again to return to normal ride height. A warning indicator illuminates in the display screen when the system is on. When you shut the engine off, the car returns to normal ride height. Remember to use the front lift again when needed, for example when backing out of a driveway.

**Note:** The front lift feature only operates if your vehicle is traveling under 25 mph (40 km/h). If your vehicle exceeds this speed, the system automatically returns your vehicle to normal ride height.

**Note:** The front lift feature does not function when in Track (T) or V-Max (V) drive modes.

## Damper Comfort Mode



E229613

You can change the feel of the suspension by pressing the damper comfort button on the center console. An indicator illuminates in the display screen when the system is active. The comfort mode operates at speeds up to 85 mph (137 km/h).

Pressing the damper comfort button softens the suspension. Pressing the button again returns the suspension to the normal setting.

**Note:** The comfort mode selection does not function when in Sport (S), Track (T) or V-Max (V) drive modes.

## Active Aerodynamics

The rear wing is a tri-state device designed to operate automatically in either a low-drag (down), high downforce (up) or airbrake mode depending on the vehicle demands.



## Driving Aids

---

The rear wing works in harmony with the bi-state front splitter. The front splitter has a raised leading edge so that the surfaces underneath and immediately downstream of it create a Venturi effect and lower the air pressure creating downforce on the front wheels. In normal (low-drag) operation, the Venturi effect draws air through ducts that connect the upper surface of the splitter just below the radiator intake. This reduces drag and eliminates unnecessary front downforce. When the rear wing moves out of the low-drag position, and to compensate for the increase in grip capability from the rear tires, the front splitter automatically compensates by closing off airflow through the ducts causing an increase in front downforce. The operation of this system is entirely automatic and is dependent on the rear-wing state and the drive mode selected.

For information on raising the rear wing for cleaning, See **Vehicle Care** (page 175).

# Load Carrying

## REAR UNDER HATCH STORAGE

Your vehicle has a storage compartment under the rear hatch.

**Note:** Avoid placing items in the storage compartment that could be affected by temperature, as this area is subject to both high and low temperatures.

## LOAD LIMIT

### Vehicle Loading - with and without a Trailer

This section guides you in the proper loading of your vehicle, trailer, or both. Keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle provides maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before you load your vehicle, become familiar with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight rating, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label or Safety Compliance Certification label.

## Tire and Loading Label Information Example:



### TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION

SEATING CAPACITY / TOTAL: 5 FRONT: 2 REAR: 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed: **385 kg or 850 lbs.**

TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE	SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT	235/45R18 94V	235 KPA, 34 PSI	
REAR	235/45R18 94V	235 KPA, 34 PSI	
SPARE	NONE	NONE	



### TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION RENSEIGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT

SEATING CAPACITY / NOMBRE DE PLACES: TOTAL 5 FRONT AVANT 2 REAR ARRIERE 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 396 kg or 875 lbs. Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser

TIRE PNEU	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESION DES PNEUS A FROID	SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS
FRONT AVANT	235/40R19 96V	255 KPA, 37 PSI	
REAR ARRIERE	235/40R19 96V	255 KPA, 37 PSI	
SPARE DE SECOURS	T125/80R16 97M	415 KPA, 60 PSI	

E198719

## Payload

Payload is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that your vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle appears on the Tire and Loading label. The label is either on the B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. Vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a tire and loading label. Look for "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg OR XXX lb" for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire and Loading Information label

## Load Carrying

is the maximum payload for your vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If you install any additional equipment on your vehicle, you must determine the new payload. Subtract the weight of the equipment from the payload listed on the Tire and Loading label. When towing, trailer tongue weight or king pin weight is also part of payload.

**Note:** *Your Ford GT is not designed for trailer towing. Never tow a trailer with your Ford GT.*



**WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

### **GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)**

GAWR is the maximum allowable weight that a single axle (front or rear) can carry. These numbers are on the Safety Compliance Certification label. The label is located on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position.

The total load on each axle must never exceed its Gross Axle Weight Rating.

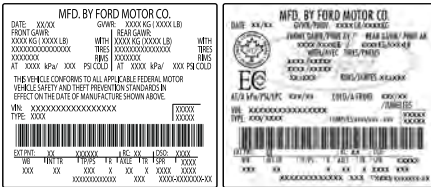
### **GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)**

GVWR is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle. This includes all options, equipment, passengers and cargo. It appears on the Safety Compliance Certification label. The label is located on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position.

The gross vehicle weight must never exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

# Load Carrying

## Safety Compliance Certification Label Example:



E198628

**WARNING:** Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification label vehicle weight limits can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

## Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight

**Note:** *Your Ford GT is not designed for trailer towing. Never tow a trailer with your Ford GT.*

## GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating)

GCWR is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer, including all cargo and passengers, that the vehicle can handle without risking damage.

The gross combined weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.

**Note:** *Your Ford GT is not designed for trailer towing. Never tow a trailer with your Ford GT.*

**WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.

**WARNING:** Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower your vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.

**WARNING:** Exceeding any vehicle weight rating can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

## Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb." on your vehicle's placard.

## Load Carrying

---

- Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
- Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.
- The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb.  $(1400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650 \text{ lb.})$
- Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
- If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

### ***Helpful examples for calculating the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity***

Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, four of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 pounds (99 kilograms) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 pounds (13.5 kilograms) each. The calculation would be:  $1400 - (5 \times 220) - (5 \times 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150$  pounds. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kilograms} - (5 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (5 \times 13.5 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5$  kilograms.

Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past two years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for twelve 100-pound (45-kilogram) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 pounds (99 kilograms), the calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (12 \times 100) = 1400 - 440$

## Load Carrying

---

- 1200 = - 240 pounds. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kilograms} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (12 \times 45 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103 \text{ kilograms}$ . You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 pounds (104 kilograms). If you remove three 100-pound (45-kilogram) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (9 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60 \text{ pounds}$ . Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kilograms} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (9 \times 45 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32 \text{ kilograms}$ .

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the front or the rear gross axle weight rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

# Towing

---

## TOWING A TRAILER

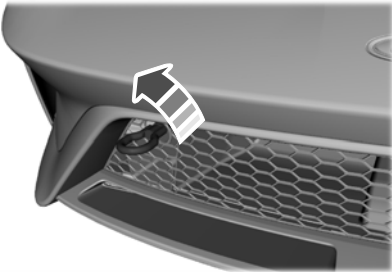
**Note:** *Your Ford GT is not designed for trailer towing. Never tow a trailer with your Ford GT.*

## TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

### Emergency Towing

You can release the steering wheel lock by starting the engine or by pressing the START/STOP button with your foot off the brake.

If your Ford GT must be transported, whenever possible, use an enclosed trailer, an open car trailer, or a roll back car carrier. If you must move the car on its wheels, install the recovery hook provided in the rear hatch storage. This recovery hook should be screwed into the receptacle located in the right corner of the front grille. Once installed, use the recovery hook to pull the car.



E233260

# Driving Hints

## BREAKING-IN

You need to break in new tires for approximately 300 mi (480 km). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

You should not drive your Ford GT aggressively for the first 600 mi (1,000 km) of vehicle operation. This will allow for proper break in of the powertrain and braking systems.

For the first 600 mi (1,000 km):

- Do not apply high load at low engine speed.
- Do not drive the vehicle at a sustained high-speed, high load.
- Avoid driving the vehicle at full throttle.
- Drive the vehicle at varying road and engine speeds.
- Do not drive in competition and race track conditions.
- Do not use launch control.
- If you are going to use the vehicle on the race track right after break in, change the oil after break in.

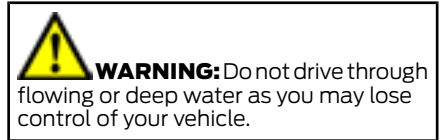
## Cold Engine Operation

The design of your Ford GT restricts engine power and RPM when the engine is cold. The engine RPM and power output will be reduced until the engine reaches full operating temperature.

## Hot Engine Shut down

You should allow your Ford GT engine to cool down for a few minutes prior to shut down after high speed or high performance driving. Allowing the engine to run at light loads and or idle for a few minutes will reduce overall engine oil and coolant temperatures.

## DRIVING THROUGH WATER



**Note:** *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

**Note:** *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filters.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Do not drive through water that is higher than the sidewall of the front tire. If the water is up onto the wheel, do not proceed. When driving through a puddle, drive slowly to avoid splashing the water into the engine air intake.



E232273

When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction may be limited.

After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Check that the horn works.



# Driving Hints

- Check that the exterior lights work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

## FLOOR MATS



**WARNING:** Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.



E142666

To install the floor mats, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position. Make sure the hook and loop fastener is properly attached to the floor at the front edge of the driver side floor mat.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

**Note:** Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.

# Roadside Emergencies

## ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

### Vehicles Sold in the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

The service is available:

- 24 hours a day, seven days a week.
- The coverage period is three years from the date of purchase.

Roadside Assistance covers:

- Assistance with a flat tire.
- Battery jump start.
- Lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility).
- Assistance if your vehicle runs out of fuel.
- Winch out — available if your vehicle is stuck.
- Towing — Ford dealership or independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law, shall tow your vehicle to the nearest Certified Ford GT Dealership.

### Vehicles Sold in the United States: Using Roadside Assistance

United States Ford GT customers who require Roadside Assistance, call the Ford GT Concierge at 800-210-5795.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company reimburses a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest authorized dealership. To obtain reimbursement information, contact the Ford GT Concierge at 800-210-5795.

For assistance outside of the United States, refer to the complete list of Ford GT Concierge phone numbers. See **About This Manual** (page 5).

## HAZARD FLASHERS

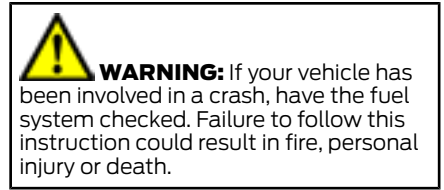
**Note:** *The hazard flashers operate when the ignition is in any position. If used when the vehicle is not running, the battery loses charge. As a result, there may be insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*



The hazard flasher control is on the floor console. Use your hazard flashers when your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

- Press the flasher control and all front and rear direction indicators flash.
- Press the button again to switch them off.

## FUEL SHUTOFF



**Note:** *When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart. Once the vehicle determines the systems are safe, then the vehicle allows you to restart.*

**Note:** *In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact a qualified technician.*

# Roadside Emergencies

The fuel pump shutoff stops the flow of fuel to the engine in the event of a moderate to severe crash. Not every impact causes a shutoff.

Should your vehicle shut off after a crash, you may restart your vehicle.

1. Press **START/STOP** to switch off your vehicle.
2. Press the brake pedal and **START/STOP** to switch on your vehicle.
3. Remove your foot from the brake pedal and press **START/STOP** to switch off your vehicle.
4. You can attempt to start the vehicle by pressing the brake pedal and **START/STOP**, or press **START/STOP** without pressing the brake pedal.

**Note:** Both methods re-enable the fuel system.

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE



**WARNING:** Do not use fuel lines, engine valve covers, windshield wiper arms, the intake manifold, or hood latch as ground points.



**WARNING:** Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

### Preparing Your Vehicle

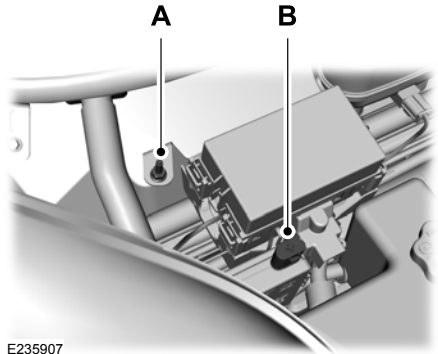
**Note:** Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.

**Note:** Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.

**Note:** Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

### Connecting the Jumper Cables

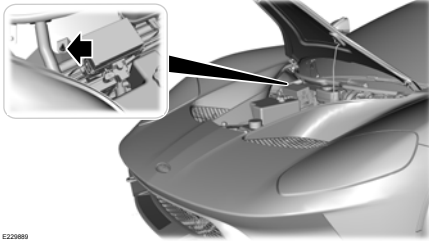


E235907

1. Switch off all accessories.
2. Remove the red cap over the positive (B) post of the disabled vehicle.
3. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (B) post of the disabled vehicle.
4. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
5. Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (A) post of the disabled vehicle.
6. Connect the other end of the negative (-) cable to the negative terminal of the booster vehicle battery.

# Roadside Emergencies

## Grounding Stud Location



E22989

## Jump Starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and rev the engine moderately, or press the accelerator gently to keep your engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

## Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

1. Remove the jumper cable from the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
2. Remove the jumper cable from the negative (A) post of the disabled vehicle.
3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (B) post of the disabled vehicle.
5. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.

## POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system flashes the direction indicators and sounds the horn (intermittently) in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front and side) or the safety belt pretensioners.

The horn and indicators will turn off when:

- You press the hazard control button.
- You press the panic button on the remote entry transmitter (if equipped).
- Your vehicle runs out of power.

## TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE

If you need to transport your vehicle, please contact the Ford GT Concierge at 800-210-5795.

You can only transport your vehicle in an enclosed trailer or on a roll back flatbed truck. The ramp angle or angle of approach on Ford GT is 9 degrees. Below are some ramp lengths required to achieve this angle depending on trailer or bed entrance height.

Height	Ramp Length
20 in (50 cm)	11 ft (330 cm)
18 in (45 cm)	10 ft (292 cm)
16 in (40 cm)	9 ft (266 cm)
14 in (35 cm)	7 ft (228 cm)
12 in (30 cm)	7 ft (203 cm)

# Roadside Emergencies

Your vehicle has a front end lift feature that uses the electronically controlled suspension hydraulics to lift the front of the car. You can use this feature for driveway approaches and speed bumps. If there is power to this system, use it to lift the front when loading the car onto a trailer or a roll back. To operate the front lift, use the switch in the console.

**Note:** *The ground clearance on the car at standard ride height is only 5 in (12 cm). Use care when moving or loading the car to make sure it does not bottom out.*

**Note:** *The vehicle doors swing both upward and outward. At the full open position, the top edge of the door is 67 in (170 cm) from the ground and swings outward 26 in (66 cm). Make sure you have the clearance you need prior to opening the door.*

The full undertrays of the vehicle are carbon fiber, there are no tie down slots. Use only over the tire straps to tie the car down for transport.

## Getting the Transmission in Neutral

If the battery loses charge, the transmission moves to park (P). You can use the transmission tool to place the car into Neutral (N). See **Automatic Transmission** (page 105).

**Note:** *If your battery loses charge with the electric park brake on, you cannot transport your vehicle until you restore power to your vehicle to turn off the electric park brake.*

## TOWING POINTS

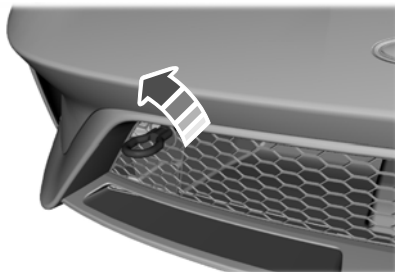
### Recovery Hook Location

Your vehicle comes with a screw-in recovery hook, it is in the storage compartment under the rear hatch.

### Installing the Recovery Hook

**Note:** *The screw-in recovery hook has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it. Make sure that the recovery hook is fully tightened.*

The installation point for the recovery hook is the receptacle in the right corner of the front grille.



E233260

# Customer Assistance

## GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized dealer. If you need assistance in identifying a Ford GT Service Dealership or would like assistance in scheduling a repair, please contact the Ford GT Concierge. See **About This Manual** (page 5).

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft® parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

### Away From Home

If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Ford GT Concierge and they will arrange repairs at the nearest Certified Ford GT Service Dealership.

Website
<a href="http://www.owner.ford.com">www.owner.ford.com</a>

These are some of the items that can be found online:

- Owner Manuals.
- Maintenance Schedules.
- Recalls.
- Ford Genuine Accessories.

In Canada:

Website
<a href="http://www.ford.ca">www.ford.ca</a>

### Additional Assistance

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Ford GT Concierge or Service Advisor at your selling or servicing authorized dealer.
2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.
3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center.

In order to help us serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Customer Relationship Center:

- Vehicle Identification Number.
- Your telephone number (home and business).
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located.
- The vehicle's current odometer reading.

In some states within the United States, you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws, and Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt.

Additionally, in some states within the United States, a consumer has the option of submitting a warranty dispute to the BBB Auto Line before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase.

## Customer Assistance

---

remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

### **IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)**

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18,000 mi (29,000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR
2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR
3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time).

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company  
16800 Executive Plaza Drive  
Mail Drop 3NE-B  
Dearborn, MI 48126

You are required to submit your warranty dispute to BBB AUTO LINE before asserting in court any rights or remedies conferred by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b). You are also required to use BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies created by the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. sec. 2301 et seq. If you choose to seek redress by pursuing rights and remedies not created by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) or the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, resort to BBB AUTO LINE is not required by those statutes.

### **THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)**

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the Getting the Services you need section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you may participate in the

# Customer Assistance

---

arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB. You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.

**BBB AUTO LINE Application:** Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

**You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:**

**BBB AUTO LINE  
3033 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 600  
Arlington, Virginia 22201**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

For additional information refer to the Better Business Bureau website.

**Note:** *Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.*

## **UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)**

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straight forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit [www.camvap.ca](http://www.camvap.ca).



# Customer Assistance

## GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel or petrol/gas engines or the proper sulfur fuel for diesel engines.

If you cannot find the proper fuel recommended for your vehicle, contact our Customer Relationship Center.

The use of improper fuels in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company or Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using improper fuels may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the United States.

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Asia-Pacific Region, Sub-Saharan Africa, U.S. Virgin Islands and/or Puerto Rico, Central America, the Caribbean, and Israel and the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact the corresponding Ford Customer Assistance Center:

### FORD MOTOR COMPANY

#### Customer Relationship Centers in:

Customer Relationship Center	Phone	Fax	E-mail
Asia Pacific	N/A	N/A	apemcrc@ford.com
Caribbean and Central America	+1 313 594 4857	-	expcac@ford.com
Middle East	Ford 80004443673	971 4 3327 266	menacac@ford.com
	Lincoln 80004441067		
	UAE 80004441066		
	Saudi Arabia 8008443673		
	Mobily and Zain cell phone users in Saudi 800850078		
Kuwait 22280384			

# Customer Assistance

Customer Relationship Center	Phone	Fax	E-mail
North Africa	N/A	N/A	nafcrc@ford.com
Puerto Rico and U.S. Virgin Islands	+1-800-841-3673	N/A	prcac@ford.com
Sub-Saharan Africa	N/A	N/A	ssacrc@ford.com
South Korea	+82-02-1600-6003	N/A	infokr1@ford.com or infokr@lincoln.com

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate to any of the above locations, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Global Trade Services by emailing, [expcso@ford.com](mailto:expcso@ford.com).

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. In the event your inquiry is unresolved, communicate your concern with the dealership's Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager. If you require additional assistance or clarification, please contact the respective Customer Relationship Center as previously listed.

**Customers in the U.S. should call 1-800-392-3673.**

## ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact the Ford GT Concierge at 1-800-210-5795.

## REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to:

Administrator

## Customer Assistance

---

1200 New Jersey Avenue,  
Southeast

Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other  
information about motor vehicle  
safety from [http://  
www.safercar.gov](http://www.safercar.gov).

### **REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)**

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect  
which could cause a crash or could cause  
injury or death, you should immediately  
inform Transport Canada and Ford of  
Canada.

<b>Transport Canada Contact Information</b>	
Website	<a href="http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/motorvehiclesafety/reporting-defects-motor-vehicles.html">http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/motorvehiclesafety/reporting-defects-motor-vehicles.html</a> (English)
Website	<a href="http://www.tc.gc.ca/fra/securiteautomobile/signaler-defaults-vehicules-automobiles.html">http://www.tc.gc.ca/fra/securiteautomobile/signaler-defaults-vehicules-automobiles.html</a> (French)
Phone	1-800-333-0510

<b>Ford of Canada Contact Information</b>	
Website	<a href="http://www.ford.ca">www.ford.ca</a>
Phone	1-800-565-3673

# Fuses

## FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

### Front Power Distribution Box



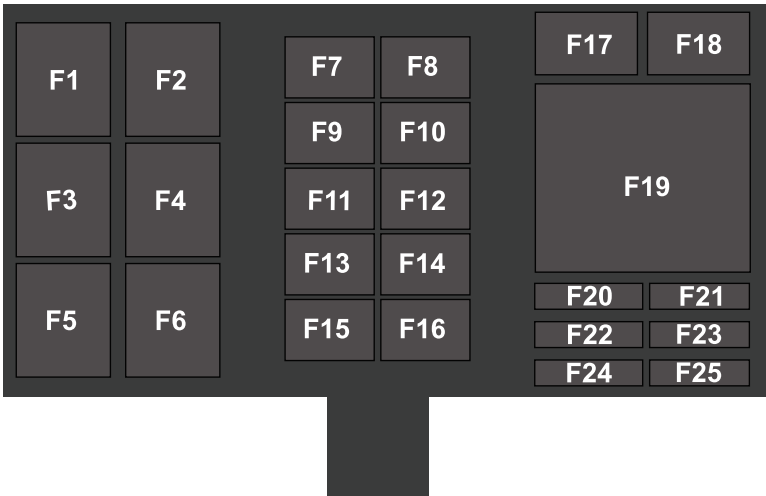
**WARNING:** Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.



**WARNING:** To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

The front power distribution box is under the front hood. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 159). It has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads. There are also high-current fuses next to the front power distribution box. If you need to replace these high-current fuses, see an authorized dealer.

If you disconnect and reconnect the battery, you need to reset some features. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 167).



E235532

# Fuses

<b>Fuse or Relay Number</b>	<b>Fuse Rating</b>	<b>Protected Components</b>
F1	—	Vehicle dynamics module relay.
F2	—	Radiator fan 1 relay.
F3	—	Heating ventilation and air conditioning blower relay.
F4	—	Wipers relay.
F5	—	Radiator fan 2 relay.
F6	—	Horn relay.
F7	50 A <sup>1</sup>	Body control module.
F8	—	Shunt.
F9	40 A <sup>1</sup>	Vacuum pump.
F10	25 A <sup>1</sup>	Wiper.
F11	40 A <sup>1</sup>	Radiator fan 2.
F12	50 A <sup>1</sup>	Body control module.
F13	60 A <sup>1</sup>	Body control module.
F14	40 A <sup>1</sup>	Radiator fan 1.
F15	40 A <sup>1</sup>	Heating ventilation and air conditioning blower.
F16	40 A <sup>1</sup>	Anti-lock brake system.
F17	40 A <sup>1</sup>	Anti-lock brake system.
F18	30 A <sup>1</sup>	Body control module.
F19	—	Vacuum pump relay.
F20	5 A <sup>2</sup>	Vehicle dynamics module.
F21	20 A <sup>2</sup>	Left-hand headlamp.

# Fuses

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Components
F22	5 A <sup>2</sup>	Anti-lock brake system.
F23	20 A <sup>2</sup>	Horn.
F24	20 A <sup>2</sup>	Electronic door system.
F25	20 A <sup>2</sup>	Right-hand headlamp.

<sup>1</sup>J-case fuse.

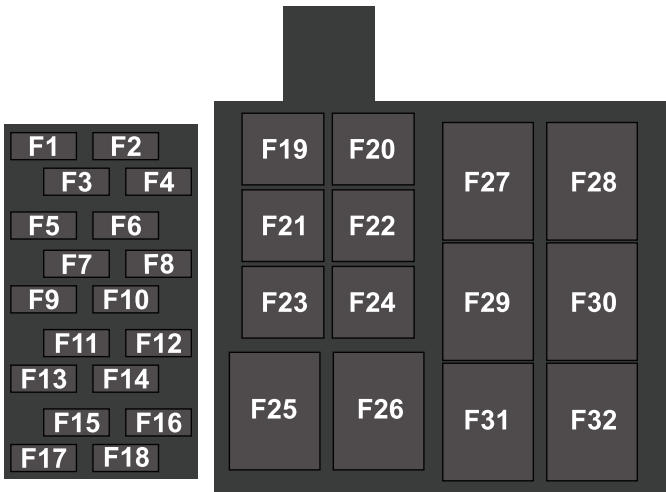
<sup>2</sup>Mini fuse.

## Rear Power Distribution Box 1

The rear power distribution box is in the engine compartment. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 159). It has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads. These are in the right-hand side of the engine compartment behind an access door in the engine surround panel. If you need to replace these high-current fuses, see an authorized dealer.

If you disconnect and reconnect the battery, you need to reset some features. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 167).

# Fuses



E235533

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Components
F1	15 A <sup>1</sup>	Vehicle power 3.
F2	5 A <sup>1</sup>	Mass airflow.
F3	10 A <sup>1</sup>	Engine control module.
F4	5 A <sup>1</sup>	Transmission control module.
F5	20 A <sup>1</sup>	Vehicle power 1.
F6	5 A <sup>1</sup>	Keep alive power.
F7	—	Not used.
F8	5 A <sup>1</sup>	Rear video camera.
F9	—	Not used.
F10	10 A <sup>1</sup>	Alternator sense.

# Fuses

<b>Fuse or Relay Number</b>	<b>Fuse Rating</b>	<b>Protected Components</b>
F11	10 A <sup>1</sup>	Air conditioner.
F12	10 A <sup>1</sup>	Damper.
F13	20 A <sup>1</sup>	Vehicle power 4.
F14	—	Not used.
F15	—	Not used.
F16	5 A <sup>1</sup>	Engine control module. Run/start.
F17	20 A <sup>1</sup>	Vehicle power 2.
F18	15 A <sup>1</sup>	Injector.
F19	30 A <sup>2</sup>	Fuel pump 1.
F20	30 A <sup>2</sup>	Fuel pump 2.
F21	30 A <sup>2</sup>	Transmission control module.
F22	30 A <sup>2</sup>	Starter.
F23	30 A <sup>2</sup>	Charge air cooler fan.
F24	—	Shunt.
F25	—	Charge air cooler fan relay.
F26	—	Not used.
F27	—	Fuel pump 1 relay.
F28	—	A/C clutch relay.
F29	—	Starter relay.
F30	—	Fuel injection relay.



# Fuses

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Components
F31	—	Fuel pump 2 relay.
F32	—	Engine control module relay.

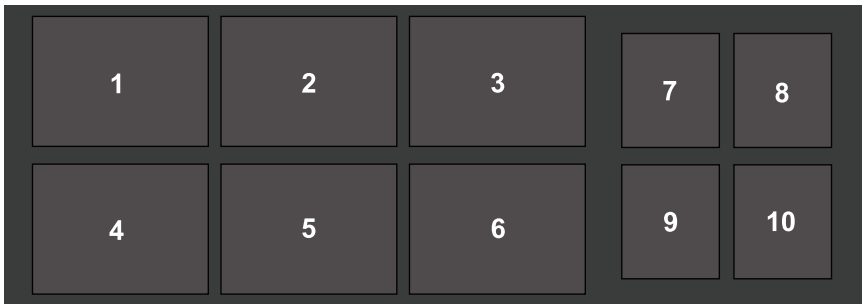
<sup>1</sup> Mini fuse.

<sup>2</sup> J-case fuse.

## Rear Power Distribution Box 2

The rear power distribution box is in the engine compartment. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 159). It has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads. These are in the right-hand side of the engine compartment behind an access door in the engine surround panel. If you need to replace these high-current fuses, see an authorized dealer.

If you disconnect and reconnect the battery, you need to reset some features. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 167).



E270327

# Fuses

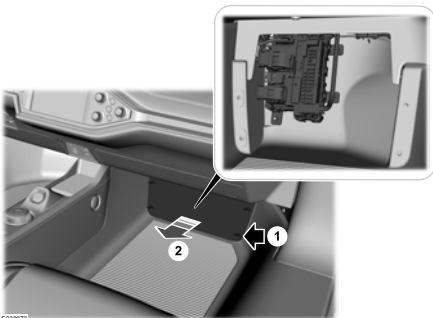
Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Components
1	—	Transmission gear fluid cooler fan relay.
2	—	Engine oil cooler fan relay.
3	—	Transmission clutch fluid cooler fan relay.
4	—	Not used.
5	—	Not used.
6	—	Not used.
7	20 A <sup>1</sup>	Engine oil cooler fan.
8	25 A <sup>1</sup>	Transmission clutch fluid cooler fan.
9	20 A <sup>1</sup>	Transmission gear fluid cooler fan.
10	20 A <sup>1</sup>	Trunk power point.

<sup>1</sup> J-case fuse.

## Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel

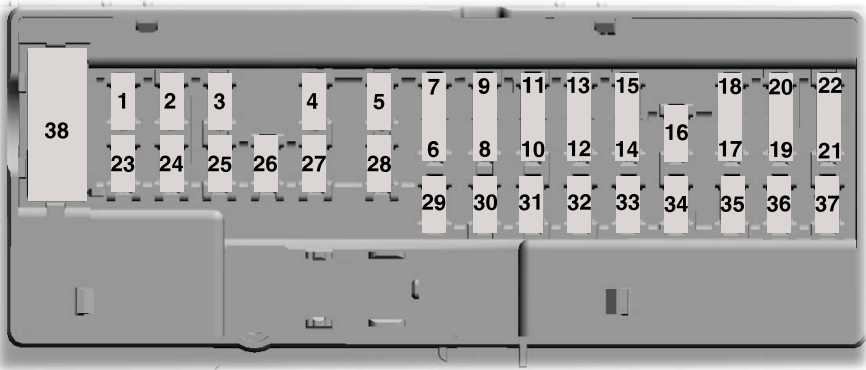
The fuse panel is in the passenger footwell behind the toeboard panel.

To remove the toeboard panel, rotate each of the four fasteners, and then pull the toeboard panel toward you. Once you remove this panel, you can access the fuse panel. After replacing a fuse, reinstall the toeboard panel and rotate the fasteners back to their original position.



E238973

# Fuses



E145984

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Components
1	—	Not used.
2	7.5 A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).
3	20 A <sup>1</sup>	Driver unlock relay. Double lock relay.
4	5 A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).
5	20 A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).
6	10 A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).
7	10 A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).
8	10 A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).
9	10 A <sup>2</sup>	Brake on-off switch.
10	5 A <sup>2</sup>	Push button start switch.

## Fuses

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Components
11	5 A <sup>2</sup>	Right-hand and left-hand exterior door locks and handles.
12	7.5 A <sup>2</sup>	RF transceiver module.
13	7.5 A <sup>2</sup>	Steering column control module logic. Smart datalink connector logic. Instrument cluster.
14	10 A <sup>2</sup>	Extended power mode module.
15	10 A <sup>2</sup>	Smart datalink connector power.
16	15 A <sup>1</sup>	Decklid release relay.
17	5 A <sup>2</sup>	Combined sensor module.
18	5 A <sup>2</sup>	Telematics control unit - modem.
19	7.5 A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).
20	7.5 A <sup>2</sup>	Front damper controllers.
21	5 A <sup>2</sup>	Shift indicator module head up display. Interior temperature sensor.
22	5 A <sup>2</sup>	Extended power mode module.
23	10 A <sup>1</sup>	Right-hand window switch illumination. Right-hand door lock switch illumination. Left-hand door lock switch illumination. Power mirror/window switch (motor). Right-hand smart window motor (logic). Left-hand smart window motor (logic).
24	20 A <sup>1</sup>	Central lock relay. Central unlock relay.
25	30 A <sup>1</sup>	Left-hand smart window motor.
26	30 A <sup>1</sup>	Right-hand smart window motor.
27	30 A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).

# Fuses

Fuse or Relay Number	Fuse Rating	Protected Components
28	20 A <sup>1</sup>	Electronic steering column lock (relay supply).
29	30 A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).
30	30 A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).
31	15 A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).
32	10 A <sup>1</sup>	SYNC. Audio on/off switch. Gear shift module. Heating ventilation and air conditioning electronic control unit power.
33	20 A <sup>1</sup>	Audio control module.
34	30 A <sup>1</sup>	Run-start relay (R12).
35	5 A <sup>1</sup>	Steering angle sensor module.
36	15 A <sup>1</sup>	Auxiliary power point.
37	20 A <sup>1</sup>	Heating ventilation and air conditioning electronic control unit ignition. Front power distribution box ignition (F1, F3, F20, F22). Rear power distribution box 1 ignition (F4, F8, F12, F16).
38	—	Not used.

<sup>1</sup>Micro 2 fuse.

<sup>2</sup>Micro 3 fuse.

**Note:** Spare fuses can vary per amperage depending on the trim level of the vehicle.

# Fuses

## CHANGING A FUSE

### Fuses



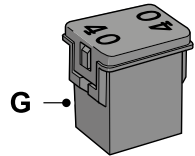
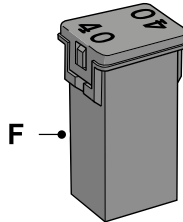
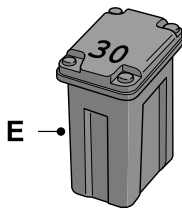
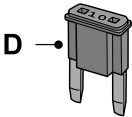
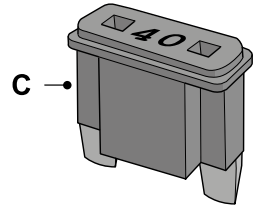
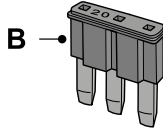
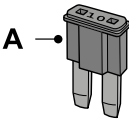
**WARNING:** Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



E217331

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

### Fuse Types



E207206

Callout	Fuse Type
A	Micro 2
B	Micro 3
C	Maxi
D	Mini

# Fuses

---

<b>Callout</b>	<b>Fuse Type</b>
E	M Case
F	J Case
G	J Case Low Profile

# Maintenance

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your Ford GT serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a network of Ford GT service dealers that are certified to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing the Ford GT.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft® parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

### Precautions

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material (such as cigarettes) away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

### Working with the Engine Off

1. Set the parking brake and shift to park (P).
2. Switch off the engine.
3. Block the wheels.

### Working with the Engine On



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

1. Set the parking brake and shift to park (P).
2. Block the wheels.

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

### Opening the Front Hood

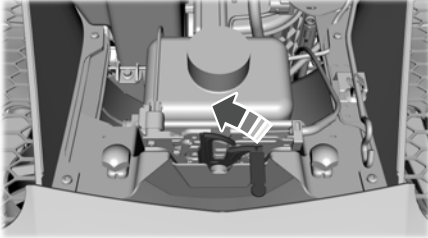


E229939



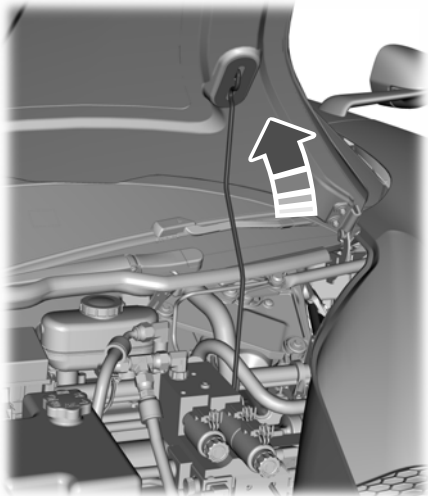
# Maintenance

1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located on the left side panel left of the pedals.
2. Slightly lift the hood.



E233210

3. Release the hood latch by pulling up on the secondary release lever.



E233828

4. Open the hood and support it with the prop rod.

## Closing the Front Hood

1. Remove the hood prop rod from the under hood slot and securely place it back in its holder.
2. Lower the hood and lightly press down until closed.

**Note:** If you do not close the front hood correctly, an indicator lamp displays in the instrument cluster. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 69).

## Opening the Rear Hatch

You can open the rear hatch by three different methods:

- A button on your remote control. See **Remote Control** (page 46).
- In the case of a dead battery or other electrical concerns, use the key blade in your remote control. See **Remote Control** (page 46).
- A button on the lighting control switch.

After you release the rear hatch latch, lift the rear hatch into the open position.

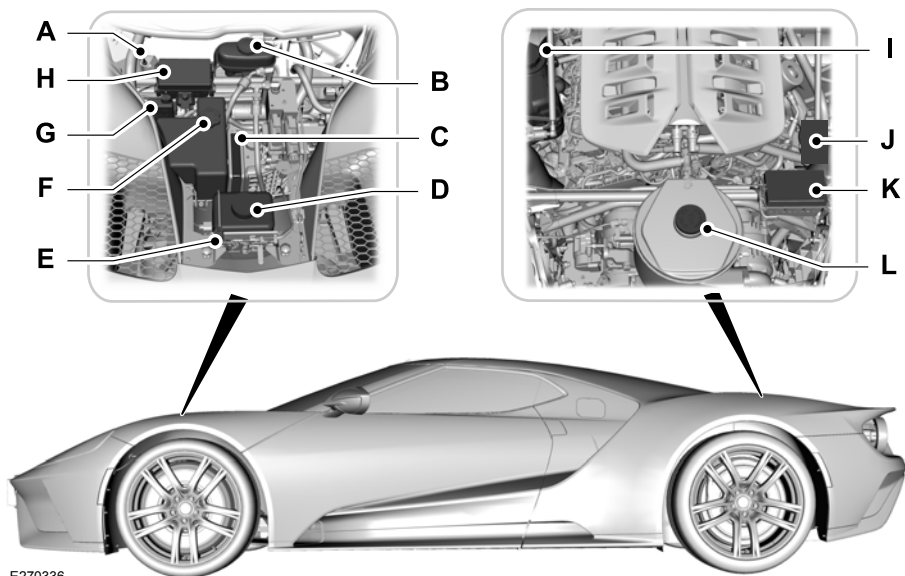
A hydraulic cylinder holds the rear hatch open.

## Closing the Rear Hatch

1. Pull down the rear hatch.
2. Lightly press the hatch into position so the latch fully engages.

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW

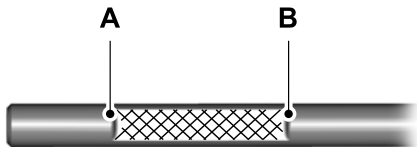


E270336

- A. Negative jump start post. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 136).
- B. Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 166).
- C. Cabin air filter access door. See **Cabin Air Filter** (page 86).
- D. Washer fluid reservoir. See **Windshield Washers** (page 61).
- E. Front hood sensor. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 69).
- F. Hydraulic fluid reservoir for power steering, active aero and active suspension. See **Power Steering Fluid Check** (page 166).
- G. Positive jump start post. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 136).
- H. Front power distribution box. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 145).
- I. Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 161).
- J. Rear power distribution box 2. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 145).
- K. Rear power distribution box 1. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 145).
- L. Oil cap, reservoir and dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 160).

# Maintenance

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK



E230019

- A MIN
- B MAX

## ENGINE OIL CHECK

**Note:** Use a thick cloth to protect your hand when removing the oil tank cap and dipstick.

To check the engine oil level consistently and accurately, do the following:

1. Make sure the parking brake is on. Make sure the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature (Coolant temperature of 190°F (87.7°C) or higher).
3. Turn the engine off and wait two to three minutes.
4. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
5. Open the rear hatch. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 157).
6. Unscrew the oil tank cap to remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 159).

7. Replace the cap and dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 160).
8. Make sure that the oil level is between the minimum and the maximum marks. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, add oil immediately. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 207).
9. If the oil level is correct, replace the cap and dipstick and make sure it is fully tightened.

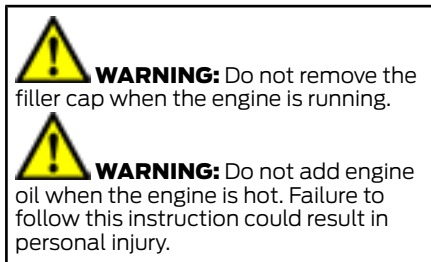
**Note:** Do not remove the dipstick when the engine is running.

**Note:** If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.

**Note:** The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 3,000 mi (5,000 km).

**Note:** High performance vehicles tend to be driven in such a way the engine experiences high speed and high load. As a result, some oil consumption could occur between oil changes. We recommend that you check the oil level on a regular basis.

## Adding Engine Oil



**Note:** Use a thick cloth to protect your hand when removing the oil tank cap and dipstick.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

# Maintenance



E142732

Only use oils certified for gasoline engines by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC).

To top up the engine oil level do the following:

1. Unscrew the oil tank cap.
2. Add engine oil by pouring oil that meets Ford specifications into the oil tank. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 207). You may have to use a funnel to pour the engine oil into the opening.
3. Recheck the oil level.
4. If the oil level is correct, replace the cap and the dipstick and make sure it is fully tightened.

**Note:** Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

**Note:** Make sure you install the oil tank cap and dipstick correctly.

**Note:** Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately.

## ENGINE COOLANT CHECK



**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is running or hot.



**WARNING:** Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.



**WARNING:** Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.

Check the concentration and level of the coolant only when the engine is cold at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 263).

**Note:** Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir when the engine is cold.

**Note:** Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark.

# Maintenance

The coolant reservoir is behind an access panel on the left side of the of the engine compartment. The cold MIN / MAX are located on the front inboard corner of the coolant reservoir. MAX is located just below where the black top meets the translucent reservoir lower. MIN is located 3/4 inch (20 mm) below the black top.



E244128

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -30°F (-34°C) and -34°F (-37°C). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

## Adding Coolant



**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is running or hot.

**Note:** Automotive fluids are not interchangeable. Do not use coolant or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.

**Note:** Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants or additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

It is very important to use prediluted coolant meeting the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 207). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not meet Ford specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately. Only check the coolant level or add coolant when the system is cold.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant meeting the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 207).
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap, turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.
5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

# Maintenance

---

If you have to add more than 1.1 qt (1 L) of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

**Note:** *During normal vehicle operation, the coolant may change color from orange to pink or light red. As long as the coolant is clear and uncontaminated, this color change does not indicate the coolant has degraded nor does it require the coolant to be drained, the system to be flushed, or the coolant to be replaced.*

**Note:** *In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location. Water alone, without coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.*

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

## Recycled Coolant

We do not recommend the use of recycled coolant as an approved recycling process is not yet available.

Dispose of used engine coolant in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

## Severe Climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

- It may be necessary to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.
- A coolant concentration of 60% provides improved freeze point protection. Coolant concentrations above 60% decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause engine damage.

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- It may be necessary to decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.
- A coolant concentration of 40% provides improved overheat protection. Coolant concentrations below 40% decrease the freeze and corrosion protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause engine damage.

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use prediluted coolant for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

## Coolant Change

At specific mileage intervals, as listed in the scheduled maintenance information, the coolant should be changed. Add prediluted coolant meeting the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 207).

## Fail-Safe Cooling

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs. The fail-safe distance depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

# Maintenance

## How Fail-Safe Cooling Works

If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone:



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.



If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

## When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated



**WARNING:** Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain

high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.



**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is running or hot.

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. Contact the Ford GT Concierge to obtain assistance. See **About This Manual** (page 5).
3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

**Note:** *Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.*

# Maintenance

## Engine Coolant Temperature Management



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and ambient temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to pull off the road. You can continue to drive your vehicle.

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and shift the transmission into park **(P)**.

2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. After several minutes, if the temperature does not drop, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CHECK

If required, have an authorized dealer check and change the transmission fluid at the correct service interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 263).

The automatic transmission does not have a transmission fluid dipstick.

Refer to your scheduled maintenance information for scheduled intervals for fluid checks and changes. Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, if the transmission slips, shifts slowly or if you notice a sign of leaking fluid, contact an authorized dealer.

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.



# Maintenance

## BRAKE FLUID CHECK



**WARNING:** Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



**WARNING:** A fluid level between the **MAX** and **MIN** lines is within the normal operating range and there is no need to add fluid. A fluid level not in the normal operating range could compromise the performance of the system. Have your vehicle checked immediately.



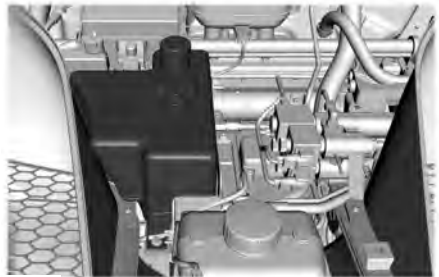
E244129

To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 207).

## POWER STEERING FLUID CHECK

The hydraulic fluid reservoir is under the hood. The fluid is used for power steering, active aerodynamics and the active hydraulic suspension. Keep the fluid level between MIN and MAX marks as shown on the reservoir.



E248557

# Maintenance

**Note:** This procedure must be followed to prevent over filling of the reservoir.

1. Start the engine and make sure that the steering wheel is at the straight ahead position. Do not move the steering wheel after this time.
2. Allow the engine to idle in Park for 2 minutes then shut the engine off.
3. After the engine has been off for 5 minutes, check the hydraulic fluid level in the reservoir.
4. The MIN / MAX marks are on the front face of the reservoir. If the level is above the MIN line on the reservoir DO NOT add fluid.
5. If the level is below the MIN line, add only enough fluid to bring the level to a point between the MIN and MAX lines.
6. DO NOT add fluid past the MAX line.

## WASHER FLUID CHECK



**WARNING:** If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 40°F (5°C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

Add fluid to fill the reservoir if the level is low. Only use a washer fluid that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 207).

State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol, a common windshield washer antifreeze additive. Washer fluids containing non-methanol antifreeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicle's paint finish, wiper blades or washer system.

## FUEL FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.

## CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY



**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling.**

The Ford GT uses a lithium ion battery. The battery is inside the right front fender. For battery maintenance or replacement, contact an authorized dealer.

When a battery replacement is required, you must use a recommended replacement battery that matches the electrical requirements of the vehicle.

**Note:** If you add electrical accessories or components to the vehicle, it may adversely affect the low voltage battery performance and durability. This may also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.

# Maintenance

Because your vehicle's engine is electronically controlled by a computer, some control conditions are maintained by power from the battery. When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the engine must relearn its idle and fuel trim strategy for optimum driveability and performance.

To restore the settings, do the following:

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
3. Switch off all accessories.
4. Press the brake pedal and start your vehicle.
5. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature. As the engine is warming up, complete the following: Reset the clock. See **Audio System** (page 218). Reset the radio station presets. See **Audio System** (page 218).
6. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
7. Drive the vehicle at least 10 mi (16 km) to completely relearn the idle trim and fuel trim strategy.

**Note:** *If you do not allow the engine to relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy, the idle quality of your vehicle may be adversely affected until the engine computer eventually relearns the idle trim and fuel trim strategy.*

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

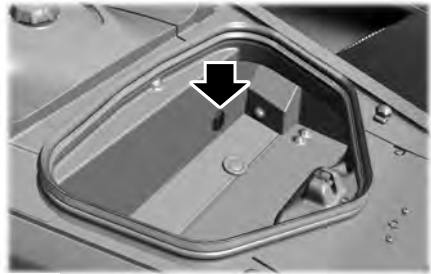
## Battery Charger and Maintainer

If you plan to have your GT parked or in storage for more than two weeks without driving it, connect the Li-Ion compatible battery charger and maintainer provided. There are two methods to connect the charger:

### Method 1: Rear Hatch Storage Compartment Power Point

Your Ford GT has a 12V power point in the rear hatch storage area that allows you to conveniently plug in to charge and maintain your battery.

**Note:** *You can only use the hatch storage power point for battery charging. The one inside the passenger compartment on the side of the center console will not work for this purpose.*



E291522

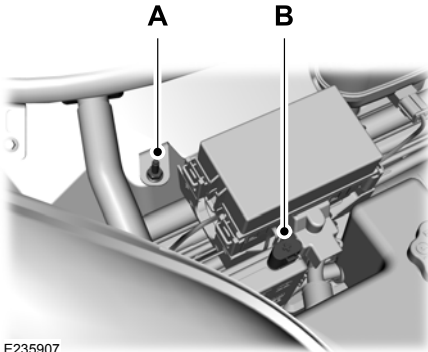
1. Locate and open the cap covering the power point.
2. Insert the provided charger plug in to the power point.
3. Connect the charger to the wall socket.
4. Disconnect the charger from the wall socket before disconnecting the cigar plug.

### Method 2: Under Hood Jump Start Posts

You can also connect the battery charger to the posts underneath the front hood for jump starting the vehicle. The charger connects simply to the jump start positive (+) and negative (-) posts as shown in the following illustration.

# Maintenance

**Note:** If you incorrectly connect the battery clamps, the reverse polarity protection of the charger ensures that the battery and charger are not damaged.



E235907

1. Connect the positive (+) red cable to the positive (B) post.
2. Connect the negative (-) black cable to the negative (A) post.
3. Connect the charger to the wall socket.
4. Disconnect the charger from the wall socket before disconnecting the battery.
5. Disconnect the black clamp before the red clamp.

The battery charger and maintainer charges the battery to a full charge and then monitors the charge as the car sits. If the battery charge level drops, the maintainer turns on to keep the battery fully charged. You can keep the car stored with the charger and maintainer attached. For further information on the charger, see the instructions provided with the charger.

**Note:** If the battery state of charge has dropped below 10.5 volts, the battery goes into its under voltage protection mode. If this has occurred, connect the charger and press the reset button on the charger for 10 seconds, which wakes up the battery to allow it to receive a charge.

**Note:** The GT battery charger and maintainer is designed for the Lithium battery used on Ford GT. Use only this device. A charger designed for a lead acid battery may damage the lithium battery in your GT.

## Battery Management System

The battery management system monitors battery conditions and takes actions to extend battery life. If excessive battery drain is detected, the system temporarily disables the electrical systems to protect the battery.

Use the charger to bring the battery back to full charge.

## Electrical Accessory Installation

**Note:** If you add electrical accessories or components to the vehicle, it may adversely affect battery performance and durability. This may also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.

## CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



E142463

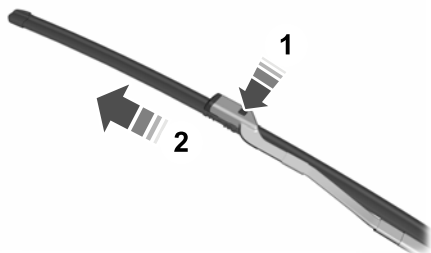
# Maintenance

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

## CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

Replacement blades are available at your Ford dealer.



E233208

**Note:** To avoid damaging the windshield, lift the wiper blade a few inches off the glass and place a cloth on the windshield under the blade.

**Note:** Manually move the wiper blades to the midway position.

**Note:** The windshield wiper blades are different in length. The longer blade is on the driver's side.

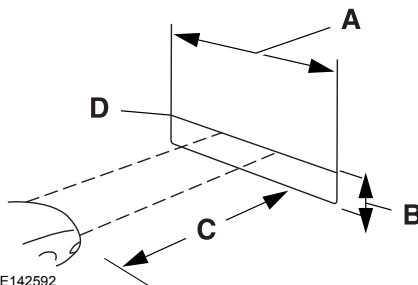
1. Disconnect the washer pipe from the wiper arm.
2. Press the release button on the top of the wiper arm where the blade assembly attaches to the arm.
3. Pull the blade assembly away from the arm, while rocking it from side to side to help release it.
4. Keep the cloth in place to avoid the arm from hitting the windshield glass.

5. Install the new blade assembly and reconnect the washer pipe.
6. When complete, switch on the wipers and they will cycle back to the park position when you switch them off.

Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.

## ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

### Headlamp Aim Target



E142592

- A 8 ft (2.4 m).
- B Center height of lamp to ground.
- C 25 ft (7.6 m).
- D Horizontal reference line.

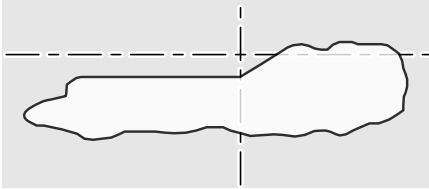
### Vertical Aim Adjustment

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface approximately 25 ft (7.6 m) away from a vertical wall or screen.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Measure the height from the center of the headlamp to the ground.

**Note:** There may be an identifying mark on the lens to help you locate the center of the headlamp bulb.

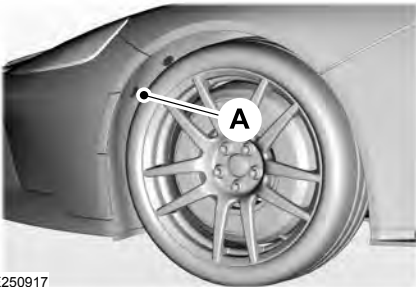
# Maintenance

4. Mark a horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen that is a minimum of 8 ft (2.4 m) long.
5. Switch the low beam headlamps on.



E209825

6. There is a distinct change from light to dark in the left-hand portion of the headlamp beam pattern. Position the top edge of this cut-off 2 in (5 cm) below the horizontal reference line.



E250917

7. Locate and remove the plug in the front of the wheel liner. Place wheels in the straight ahead position. Use a ½ inch socket wrench to adjust vertical alignment (A).

**Note:** To see a clearer light pattern while adjusting one headlamp, block the light from the other headlamp.

8. Switch the low beam headlamps off.

## CHANGING A BULB

### LED Lamps

All exterior and interior lamps on the GT are LED.

These lamps operate at a high voltage. Contact an authorized dealer if they fail.

## CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER

Please see an authorized dealer.

# Track Use

---

## Operating at High Speeds and on Track Days

Your vehicle is capable of sustained high speeds and track day driving. Follow the guidelines for breaking in the tires and powertrain before operating your vehicle at high speeds or on a track. See **Breaking-In** (page 133).

**Note:** *Obey all traffic laws and only operate your vehicle at locations designed to do so safely.*

**Note:** *For a detailed description of what your vehicle's New Limited Warranty covers, see the Ford GT Warranty Guide provided to you along with your owner's manual.*

Before operating your vehicle at high speeds, follow these guidelines:

### Overall Vehicle Preparation:

- Inspect wheels and tires for wear and damage. Replace any damaged wheels or tires.
- Torque the wheel lug nuts to the proper specification: 150 lb.ft (204 Nm).
- Inspect all aerodynamic grilles and cooling system components for damage. Make sure there is no debris or non-factory installed protective films or equipment that could obstruct airflow.
- Verify your tires have the correct tire pressure. See the section that follows for tire pressure specifications.
- Do not operate your vehicle at high speeds while carrying cargo.

### Brake System Preparation:

- Your vehicle has carbon ceramic brake rotors that require extra care and inspection methods including measuring their weight and reviewing the surface condition.
- Inspect the brake system for wear or damage. Replace worn or below specification brake pads, rotors or cooling hoses. Make sure that the cross drilling holes in the rotors are open and free of debris.
- Prior to track use, replace the brake fluid with fresh Motorcraft/Ford DOT 4 LV High Performance Brake Fluid or other DOT compliant fluid with a dry boiling point greater than 500°F (260°C) from a sealed container. Do not use silicone or DOT 5 brake fluids.

### Powertrain Preparation:

- Make sure the engine oil, coolant, transmission fluids and hydraulic system fluid have received proper maintenance, are clean and are at the appropriate capacity.
- Allow the powertrain to warm up and reach normal operating temperature. Your vehicle has electronic controls to reduce power or limit engine RPM to reduce powertrain temperatures if required.
- Regularly check the engine oil level during the event. Maintain the engine oil level at or near the max mark on the engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 160).

**Note:** *To obtain service, please contact the Ford GT Concierge and they will advise you of the nearest Certified Ford GT Service Dealership. See **About This Manual** (page 5).*

# Track Use

## Road Course Vehicle Preparation

Your Ford GT is already set up from the factory for road and track use, but if you plan to participate in road course track days, we recommend the following chassis settings for optimal tire wear and handling performance.

Front Alignment	Setting
Camber	-1.5°
Caster	6°
Toe — Total	-0.10° (toe out)

Rear Alignment	Setting
Camber	-1.5°
Toe — Total	0.22° (toe in)

Tire Pressure (cold minimum) <sup>1</sup>	Setting
Front	26 psi (179 kPa)
Rear	27 psi (186 kPa)

<sup>1</sup>If the track has high banking or if your vehicle will exceed 165 mph (265 km/h), increase the cold tire pressure to 38 psi (262 kPa).

Tire Pressure (hot)	Setting
Front	33 psi (227 kPa)
Rear	33 psi (227 kPa)

All settings are at Normal ride height and curb loading condition - full fluids, no passengers or cargo.

After your track day is complete and your vehicle has cooled down, return the tire pressure to the specification listed on the vehicle placard.



# Launch Control

---

## WHAT IS LAUNCH CONTROL

**Note:** Only use this feature in a controlled environment, such as a track. Launch control is not for use in normal driving.

**Note:** Launch control is not available when in the Wet drive mode.

Your vehicle has a launch control feature that uses clutch and engine controls to reduce wheel spin or slip on a hard acceleration from a standing start.

To operate launch control, your vehicle must meet the following conditions:

- You must be in any drive mode other than Wet drive mode.
- You must close the doors, front hood and rear hatch.
- Your vehicle should be on a level surface.
- You must disengage the electric park brake.
- You must be at a complete stop with the brake pedal applied and the transmission selector in drive (D).
- Transmission clutch fluid temperature must be in the normal operating temperature range.
- No powertrain or brake system warning indicators are active.

Launch Control remains active until:

- You switch the feature off through the display screen.
- Your vehicle no longer meets the conditions required for launch control to operate.

## USING LAUNCH CONTROL

To use Launch Control:

- Activate the launch control feature through the display screen. See **General Information** (page 74).
- When activated, the LC icon appears in white inside the instrument cluster.
- With your vehicle at a complete stop, hold the brake pedal firmly and press the accelerator pedal to wide open throttle.
- When the engine reaches the required RPM and your vehicle meets all other system requirements, the LC icon turns from white to green and the vehicle is ready to launch.
- Quickly release the brake pedal and carefully steer your vehicle when it accelerates from a stop. The launch control feature controls wheel spin as you accelerate.
- After completing the run and stopping, the LC icon returns to white.
- If any operating conditions are not within specification, the LC icon turns grey with a strikethrough.
- You can switch launch control off through the display screen. See **General Information** (page 74).

# Vehicle Care

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Your authorized dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes.

## CLEANING PRODUCTS

### Materials

For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover, ZC-42 (U.S. & Canada)	
Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner, ZC-15 (U.S. & Canada)	ESR-M5B194-B
Motorcraft® Detail Wash, ZC-3-A (U.S. & Canada)	ESR-M14P4-A
Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser, ZC-20 (U.S.)	ESR-M14P3-A
Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo, CXC-66-A (Canada)	
Motorcraft® Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner, ZC-56 (U.S. & Canada)	
Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner, CXC-101 (Canada)	
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant, ZC-32-B2 (U.S.)	WSS-M14P19-A
Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid, CXC-37-A/B/D/F (Canada)	WSS-M14P19-A
Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner, ZC-54 (U.S. & Canada)	
Motorcraft® Premium Glass Cleaner, CXC-100 (Canada)	ESR-M14P5-A
Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover, ZC-14 (U.S.)	
Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner, ZC-23 (U.S.)	ESR-M14P5-A
Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner, ZC-37-A (U.S. & Canada)	

## CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

**Note:** Never drive your vehicle through an automated, commercial car wash due to the vehicle's low ground clearance. Always wash your vehicle by hand. Never use a power washer or high pressure wand to clean your vehicle.

**Note:** Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage painted surfaces. If these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash the affected area as soon as possible.

**Note:** Use a separate wash mitt and soap bucket to clean the wheels to prevent brake dust from scratching the paint finish.

# Vehicle Care

**Note:** Do not spray cleaning products on the brake discs. Any resulting damage is not covered by your vehicle warranty.

**Note:** Always follow the instructions included in this manual when cleaning your vehicle and do not use abrasive cleaning products.

## Standard Paint Finish

If your vehicle has a matte paint finish, see **Matte Paint Finish** in this chapter.

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, we recommend Motorcraft®™ Detail Wash.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, for example dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash your vehicle when it is hot to the touch, or during strong or direct sunlight.
- Dry your vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel to eliminate water spotting.
- Immediately remove fuel spillages, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time. We recommend Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover.

## Matte Paint Finish (if Equipped)

Prepare the following before washing your vehicle:

- Use a no shine, matte car wash soap that does not contain fillers or silicone.
- Use high quality, soft lamb's wool mitts and wash each mitt thoroughly after each car wash.

- Wash your vehicle's painted surfaces in the shade with two buckets of water, one for soap and the other for clean water.
- Add a plastic grit guard to the bottom of the soap bucket so that dirt settles at the bottom of the bucket and does not contaminate the wash mitt.

To wash your vehicle:

1. Rinse your vehicle to remove as much dirt and debris as possible.
2. Wet the wash mitt in the soap bucket and apply the soapy water to your vehicle in a gentle back-and-forth motion.

**Note:** Do not rub the wash mitt in circles or rub the paint surface aggressively. Rubbing too hard in circles leaves permanent swirl marks in the paint finish.

3. Rinse the wash mitt in clean water before inserting the mitt back into the soap bucket to prevent dirt from contaminating the soapy water.
4. Rinse the vehicle with clean water and dry it with a clean, damp cloth.

**Note:** Do not use automotive waxes, detail sprays or abrasive polishes or glazes on your vehicle. Improper use of cleaning products can cause damage to your vehicle not covered by your vehicle warranty.

Immediately remove fuel spillages, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. Use a wet microfiber towel and an alcohol-based window cleaner, a matte paint finish cleaner or a 50/50 mix of alcohol and deionized water.

**Note:** Always soak a microfiber towel or wash mitt with water before cleaning. Using a dry towel or mitt on a matte paint finish creates a permanent glossy spot in the paint finish.

# Vehicle Care

---

## Raising the Rear Wing

For routine cleaning, raise the wing.

Using the information display select the following:

1. Rear wing deployment.
2. Select Raised.

After you have cleaned your vehicle, to return the wing to the lowered position you must drive the car at 15 mph (25 km/h) or above. The wing will return to the lowered position.

**Note:** *You cannot lower the wing when your vehicle is stationary.*

## Exterior Plastic Parts

For routine cleaning we recommend Motorcraft® Detail Wash. If tar or grease spots are present, we recommend Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover.

## Under Hood

For removing black rubber marks from under the hood we recommend Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner or Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover.

## WAXING

**Note:** *If your vehicle has a matte paint finish, do not wax your vehicle.*

Regular waxing is necessary to protect your car's paint from the elements. We recommend that you wash and wax the painted surface once or twice a year.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight. Always wash your vehicle before applying wax.

- Use a quality wax that does not contain abrasives.
- Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax.

- Apply a small amount of wax in a back-and-forth motion, not in circles.
- Do not allow wax to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim. The wax will discolor or stain the parts over time.
- Do not apply wax to glass areas.
- After waxing, your car's paint should feel smooth, and be free of streaks and smudges.

## CLEANING THE ENGINE

Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal.

When washing:

- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean. In Canada, use Motorcraft Engine Shampoo.
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well, or the area in and around these locations.
- Never spray water on electrical components such as modules, connectors and fuse boxes. Cover all electrical components before cleaning to prevent water damage.

# Vehicle Care

## CLEANING THE WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

Dirty windshield and wipers will result in poor windshield wiper operation. Keep the windshield and wiper blades clean to maintain windshield wiper performance.

To clean exterior glass surfaces and wiper blades:

- Clean the exterior surface of the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.
- For windshields contaminated with tree sap, chemicals, wax or bugs, clean the outside surface of the windshield with Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.
- Clean the wiper blades with isopropyl rubbing alcohol or windshield washer concentrate.

The interior glass surface of the windshield and engine cover glass, and both the inner and outer surface of the bulkhead glass, have a laminate coating that requires special care.

To clean interior glass surfaces:

- When cleaning the inside of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any excess cleaner off these surfaces immediately.
- Use a microfiber towel and plain water, or a mixture of one-half water and one-half white vinegar, to clean the interior glass surfaces.

**Note:** *Never use alcohol or ammonia based cleaners, aerosol sprays or abrasive compounds to clean the interior glass surfaces of your vehicle. Using improper cleaning products can cause damage to your vehicle.*

## CLEANING THE INTERIOR



**WARNING:** Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

Clean safety belts with water applied with a soft sponge. Let them dry naturally, away from artificial heat.

Wipe carbon fiber surfaces with a clean, damp and soft cloth to remove dust. Then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

### Cleaning Alcantara Microfiber Cloth

**Note:** *Some models have Alcantara microfiber cloth fabric on the seats, headliner, instrument panel and door panels.*

Use a soft brush, a clean, dry cloth or vacuum cleaner to remove dust and loose dirt from Alcantara cloth surfaces. Gently wipe the cloth surfaces with a clean, damp cotton cloth.

**Note:** *Alcantara microfiber cloth fabric are made of polyester microfiber with micro-porous polyurethane. Using commercially available fabric cleaners can cause permanent damage.*

**Note:** *Do not use commercially available leather and vinyl cleaning products on Alcantara cloth fabric.*

Depending on the type of stain, use water, lemon juice or pure ethyl alcohol when cleaning. For cleaning Alcantara microfiber cloth, refer to the following chart:

# Vehicle Care

Type of Stain	Cleaning Procedure
Fruit juice, jam, jelly, syrup or ketchup.	Use lukewarm water and rinse by dabbing with clean water.
Blood, egg, excrement or urine.	Use cold water and rinse by dabbing with clean water. Avoid warm water because it makes these substances coagulate.
Liquor, alcoholic beverages, wine, beer, cola and tea.	Use lukewarm water. If the color remains, treat with lemon juice and then rinse.
Indelible pencil, cocoa, chocolate, pastry with cream or chocolate, ice cream or mustard.	Use lukewarm water and rinse by dabbing with clean water.
Vinegar, hair gel, tomato sauce or coffee with sugar.	Use lemon juice, wipe with lukewarm water and rinse by dabbing with clean water.
Dye transfer and all other stains.	Use ethyl alcohol, then dab with water.

## CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL AND INSTRUMENT CLUSTER LENS



**WARNING:** Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

**Note:** Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather interior trim surfaces. See **Cleaning Leather Seats** (page 180).

**Note:** If your vehicle has Alcantara or Miko microfiber cloth trim, follow the cleaning instructions in this chapter. See **Cleaning the Interior** (page 178).

Clean the carbon fiber portions of the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

- Do not use any household cleaning products or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish of the instrument panel, interior trim and cluster lens.
- Wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.
- Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill onto interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Your warranty may not cover these damages.

# Vehicle Care

---

## CLEANING LEATHER SEATS

If your vehicle has Alcantara or Miko microfiber cloth trim, follow the cleaning instructions in this chapter. See **Cleaning the Interior** (page 178).

**Note:** *Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather interior trim surfaces.*

For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For cleaning and removing stains such as dye transfer, use Motorcraft™ Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner or a commercially available leather cleaning product for automotive interiors.

**Note:** *Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.*

You should:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Clean and treat spills and stains as soon as possible.

Do not use the following products as these may damage the leather:

- Oil and petroleum or silicone-based leather conditioners.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcohol solutions.
- Solvents or cleaners intended specifically for rubber, vinyl and plastics.

## REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

See your authorized dealer to obtain touch-up paint for the exterior color of your vehicle. The color code is included on the Safety Compliance Certification label on the driver's door-latch post. Follow the instructions on the paint bottle.

## CLEANING THE WHEELS

This information applies to alloy and carbon fiber wheels.

**Note:** *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheels.*

**Note:** *Do not drive your vehicle through an automated, commercial car wash. Automated car washes can damage your vehicle.*

**Note:** *Do not use industrial-strength or heavy-duty cleaners in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt.*

**Note:** *Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergents.*

**Note:** *Do not spray wheel cleaning products on any part of the braking system. Use a mild soap and water solution only.*

Alloy and carbon fiber wheels are coated with a paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean the wheels weekly using Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner or a gentle soap solution. Apply to the wheel only using manufacturer's instructions.
- Use a soft sponge to remove deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.

# Vehicle Care

---

- Rinse thoroughly with a strong stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.
- To remove tar and grease, use Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.

## VEHICLE STORAGE

At Ford, we fully understand that many Ford Performance vehicles will see only occasional operation and that many of the vehicles, especially in northern climates, may be stored for an extended period during the winter months. If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, read the following maintenance recommendations to make sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

We engineer and test all motor vehicles and their components for reliable, regular driving. Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded engine performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve engine components.

### General

**Note:** *Do not park your vehicle in facilities that use parking platforms or elevators that lift your vehicle. The vehicle Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of using this type of equipment.*

- Store all vehicles inside a garage or building in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible. Use a soft, breathable vehicle cover.

### Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and the underside of front fenders.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

### Engine

- Change the engine oil and filter prior to storage because used engine oil contains contaminants which may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days for a minimum of 15 minutes. Run at fast idle with the climate controls set to defrost until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.
- If your vehicle is stored for more than a few months, we recommend that you change the engine oil before you use your vehicle again.

### Fuel system

- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle and add commercially available fuel stabilizer. Run the engine for a minimum of one minute to ensure that treated fuel has circulated through the system.



# Vehicle Care

---

## Cooling system

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing your vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm that there are no cooling system leaks and that fluid is at the recommended level.

## Battery

- Connect your vehicle to the battery charger/maintainer provided with your vehicle whenever you store your vehicle for more than 2 weeks.
- Connect the wires as shown in the illustration. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 167).

## Brakes

- Make sure the brakes and parking brake release fully.

## Tires

- To minimize flat spots on the tires, inflate all four tires to the recommended cold pressures listed on the Safety Compliance Certification label or Tire Label. When the vehicle is taken out of storage, reset the tire pressures as necessary to the recommended levels listed on the Safety Compliance Certification label or Tire Label affixed to your vehicle.

**Note:** *If you store your vehicle in a location with low ambient temperatures, follow the instructions for care of summer tires. See **Using Summer Tires** (page 201).*

## Miscellaneous

- Move vehicles at least 25 ft (7.5 m) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent flat spots in the tires.

## Removing Vehicle From Storage

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check under the hood and engine cover for any foreign material that may have collected during storage such as mice or squirrel nests.
- Check the exhaust for any foreign material that may have collected during storage.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Drive your vehicle 15 ft (4.5 m) back and forth with the brake lightly applied.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.

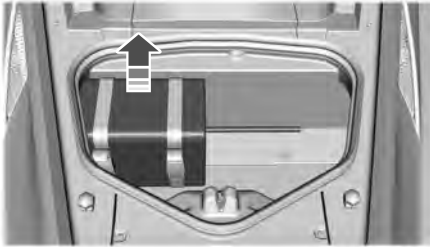
See an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

## BODY STYLING KITS

The distance between the underside of your vehicle and the ground is less than that of other models. Drive with extreme care to avoid damage to your vehicle.

# Wheels and Tires

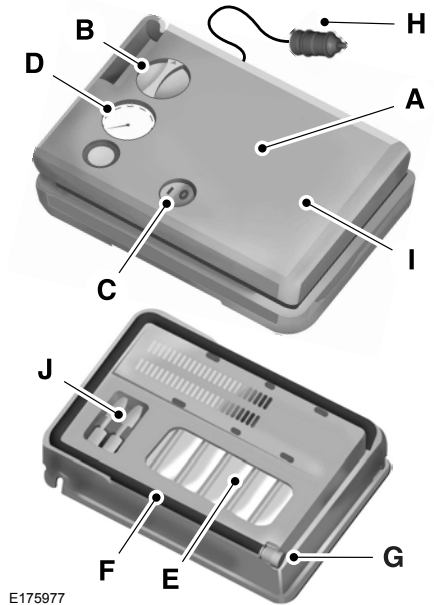
## TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT



E244127

The kit is located in the storage compartment under the rear hatch, forward of the rear wing. The kit consists of an air compressor to re-inflate the tire and a canister of sealing compound that will effectively seal most punctures caused by nails or similar objects. This kit provides a temporary tire repair, allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 120 mi (200 km) at a maximum speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) to reach a tire service location.

**Note:** *The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only. See an authorized Ford dealer for replacement sealant canisters.*



E175977

- A Air compressor (inside).
- B Selector switch.
- C On and off button.
- D Air pressure gauge.
- E Sealant bottle and canister.
- F Dual purpose hose: air and repair.
- G Tire valve connector.
- H Accessory power plug.
- I Casing/housing.
- J Bike/raft/sports ball adapters.

# Wheels and Tires

## General Information



**WARNING:** Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

**Note:** Do not use the kit if you have severely damaged a tire. Only seal punctures located within the tire tread with the kit.

Do not attempt to repair punctures larger than 0.2362 in (6 mm) or damage to the tire's sidewall. The tire may not completely seal.

Loss of air pressure may adversely affect tire performance. For this reason:

**Note:** Do not drive the vehicle above 50 mph (80 km/h).

**Note:** Do not drive further than 120 mi (200 km). Drive only to the closest authorized Ford dealer or tire repair shop to have your tire inspected.

- Drive carefully and avoid abrupt steering maneuvers.
- Periodically monitor tire inflation pressure in the affected tire; if the tire is losing pressure, have the vehicle towed on a flat bed.
- Read the information in the Tips for Use of the Kit section to make sure safe operation of the kit and your vehicle.

## Tips for Use of the Kit

To ensure safe operation of the kit:

- Read all instructions and cautions fully.
- Before operating the kit, make sure your vehicle is safely off the road and away from moving traffic. Switch on the hazard lights.

- Always set the parking brake to ensure the vehicle does not move unexpectedly.
- Do not remove any foreign objects, such as nails or screws, from the tire.
- When using the kit, leave the engine running (only if the vehicle is outdoors or in a well-ventilated area) so the compressor does not drain the vehicle's battery.
- Do not allow the compressor to operate continuously for more than 15 minutes. This will help prevent the compressor from overheating.
- Never leave the kit unattended during operation.
- Sealant compound contains latex. Those with latex sensitivities should use appropriate precautions to avoid an allergic reaction.
- Keep the kit away from children.
- Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between -22°F (-30°C) and 158°F (70°C).
- Only use the sealing compound before the use-by date. The use-by date is on a label on the sealant canister, which you can see through the rectangular viewing window on the bottom of the compressor. Check the use-by date regularly and replace the canister after four years of non-use.
- Do not store the kit unsecured inside the passenger compartment of the vehicle as it may cause injury during a sudden stop or crash. Always store the kit in its original location.
- After sealant use, an authorized Ford dealer must replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel.
- Operating the kit could cause an electrical disturbance in radio operation.

# Wheels and Tires



\* When inflation only is required for a tire or other objects, the selector must be in the Air position.

## What to do When a Tire Is Punctured

You can repair a tire puncture within the tire's tread area in two stages with the kit.

- In the first stage, inflate the tire with a sealing compound and air. After you inflate the tire, you will need to drive the vehicle a short distance (about 4 mi (6 km) to distribute the sealant in the tire.
- In the second stage, check the tire pressure and adjust, if necessary, to the vehicle's specified tire inflation pressure.

## First Stage: Inflating the Tire with Sealing Compound and Air



**WARNING:** Do not stand directly over the kit while inflating the tire. If you notice any unusual bulges or deformations in the tire's sidewall during inflation, stop and call roadside assistance.



**WARNING:** If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.



**WARNING:** Do not run the engine when operating the air compressor unless the vehicle is outdoors or in a well-ventilated area.

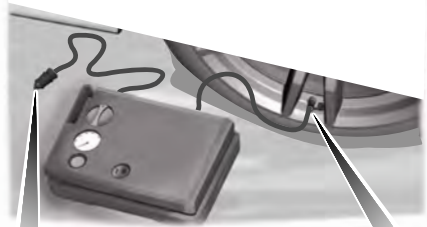
Preparation: Park the vehicle in a safe, level and secure area, away from moving traffic.

Switch the hazard lights on. Apply the parking brake and switch the engine off. Inspect the flat tire for visible damage.

Sealant compound contains latex. Use appropriate precautions to avoid any allergic reactions.

Do not remove any foreign object that has pierced the tire. If a puncture is located in the tire sidewall, stop and call roadside assistance.

1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.
2. Unwrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) from the back of the compressor housing.
3. Fasten the hose to the tire valve by turning the connector clockwise. Tighten the connection securely.

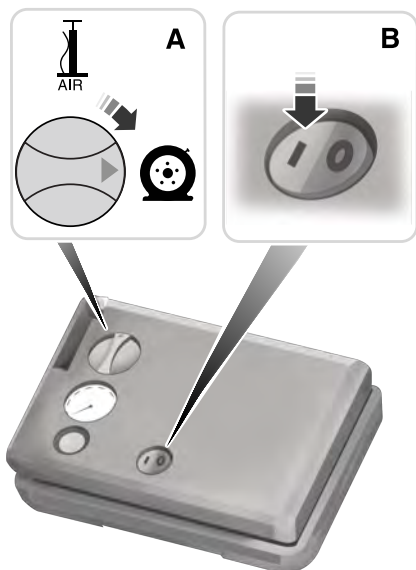


E252191

4. Plug the power cable into the 12-volt power point located on the right side of the floor console.

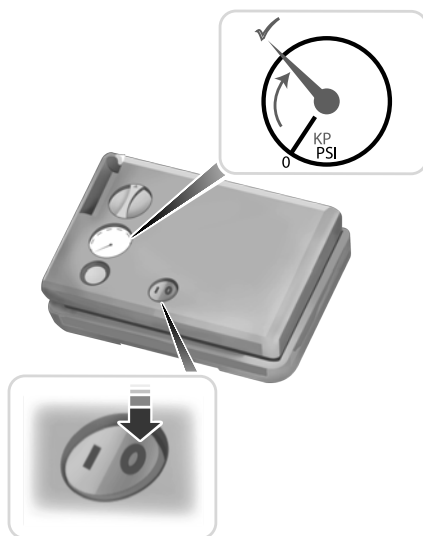
## Wheels and Tires

- Remove the warning sticker found on the casing/housing and place it on the top of the instrument panel or the center of the dash.
- Start the vehicle and leave the engine running so the compressor does not drain the vehicle's battery.



- Turn dial (A) clockwise to the sealant position. Switch the kit on by pressing the on/off button (B).
- Inflate the tire to the pressure listed on the tire label located on the driver's door or the door jamb area. The initial air pressure gauge reading may indicate a value higher than the label pressure while you pump the sealing compound into the tire. This is normal and should be no reason for concern. The pressure

gauge reading will indicate the tire inflation pressure after about 30 seconds of operation. You should check the final tire pressure with the compressor turned OFF in order to get an accurate pressure reading.



- When the tire reaches the recommended tire pressure, switch off the kit, unplug the power cable, and disconnect the hose from the tire valve. Re-install the valve cap on the tire valve and return the kit to the stowage area.
- Immediately and cautiously, drive the vehicle 4 mi (6 km) to distribute the sealant evenly inside the tire. Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
- After 4 mi (6 km), stop and check the tire pressure. See Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure.

# Wheels and Tires

**Note:** If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road to call for roadside assistance. Note: Do not proceed to the second stage of this operation.

## Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure



**WARNING:** The power plug may get hot after use and should be handled carefully when unplugging.

If you are proceeding from the First Stage: Re-inflating the Tire with Sealing Compound and Air section and have injected sealant in the tire and the pressure is below 20 psi (137 kPa), continue to the next step.

Check the air pressure of your tires as follows:



E175983

1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.
2. Firmly screw the air compressor hose onto the valve stem by turning clockwise.
3. Push and turn the dial clockwise to the air position.

4. If required, switch on the compressor and adjust the tire to the recommended inflation pressure shown on the tire label located on the driver's door or door jamb area. You should check the tire pressure with the compressor turned OFF in order to get an accurate pressure reading.
5. Unplug the hoses, re-install the valve cap on the tire and return the kit to the stowage area.

## What to Do After the Tire has Been Sealed

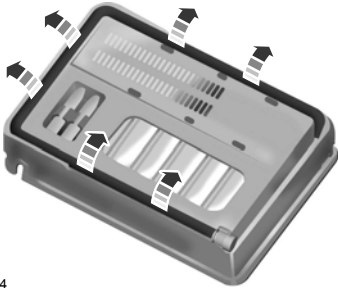
After using the kit to seal your tire, you will need to replace the sealant canister. You can obtain sealant canisters and spare parts at an authorized Ford dealer. You can dispose of empty sealant canisters at home. However, you should dispose of canisters still containing liquid sealant through your local authorized Ford dealer or tire dealer, or in accordance with local waste disposal regulation.

**Note:** After you use the sealing compound, the maximum vehicle speed is 50 mph (80 km/h) and the maximum driving distance is 120 mi (200 km). You should inspect the sealed tire immediately.

You can check the tire pressure any time within the 120 mi (200 km) by performing the steps listed previously in the Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure procedure.

# Wheels and Tires

## Removal of the sealant canister from the kit



E175984

1. Unwrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) from the compressor housing.



E175985

2. Unwrap the power cord.



E175986

3. Remove the back cover.



E175987

4. Rotate the sealant canister up 90 degrees and pull away from casing/housing to remove.

## Installation of the sealant canister to the kit

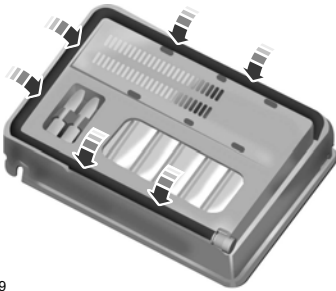
1. With the canister held perpendicular to the housing, insert the canister nozzle into the connector and push until seated.
2. Rotate the canister 90 degrees down into the housing/casing.



E175988

3. Snap the back cover back into place.

# Wheels and Tires



E175989

4. Wrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) around the channel on the bottom of the housing/casing.



E175990

5. Wrap the power cord around the housing and stow the accessory power plug into its storage area.

**Note:** *If you experience any difficulties with the removal or installation of the sealant canister, consult an authorized Ford dealer for assistance.*

Make sure you check the sealant compound's use-by date regularly. The use-by date is on a label located on the sealant canister, which you can see through the rectangular viewing window on the bottom of the kit. You should replace the sealant canister after four years of non-use.

## TIRE CARE

### Information About Uniform Tire Quality Grading



E142542

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example: **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A.**

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or LT type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104 (c)(2).



# Wheels and Tires

## U.S. Department of Transportation Tire quality grades:

The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

### Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear 1 ½ times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### Traction AA A B C



**WARNING:** The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

### Temperature A B C



**WARNING:** The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the

# Wheels and Tires

---

Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

## Glossary of Tire Terminology

\***Tire label:** A label showing the original equipment tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

\***Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

\***Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

\***Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at set pressure. For example: For P-metric tires 35 psi (241 kPa) and for Metric tires 36 psi (248 kPa). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire capability.

\***Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 42 psi (289 kPa). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

\***kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

\***PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

\***Cold tire pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mi (1.6 km).

\***Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.

\***B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.

\***Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.

\***Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.

\***Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

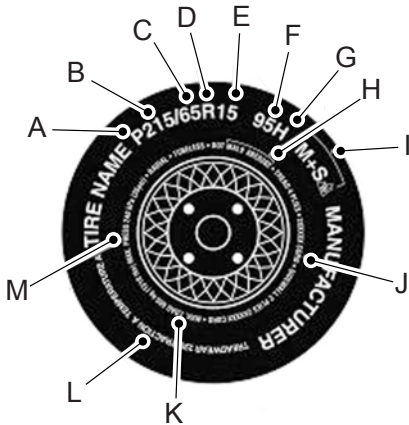
\***Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

# Wheels and Tires

## Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

## Information on P Type Tires



E142543

P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

**A. P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks. **Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either the European Tire and Rim Technical Organization or the Japan Tire Manufacturing Association.

**B. 215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

**C. 65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

**D. R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

**E. 15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

**F. 95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

## Wheels and Tires

**G. H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Letter rating	Speed rating
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
P	93 mph (150 km/h)
Q	99 mph (160 km/h)
R	106 mph (170 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)

Letter rating	Speed rating
Y	186 mph (300 km/h)
ZR	>186 mph (300 km/h)

**Note:** For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

**H. U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

**I. M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or  
**AT:** All Terrain, or  
**AS:** All Season.

# Wheels and Tires

---

**J. Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

**K. Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. See the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

## **L. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:**

**\*Treadwear** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

**\*Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

**\*Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

**M. Maximum Inflation Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the vehicle manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

# Wheels and Tires

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load or radial tubeless.

## Location of the Tire Label

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the driver's side door opening.

## Inflating Your Tires

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.



### **WARNING:**

Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge

# Wheels and Tires

---

of the driver's door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

**Maximum Inflation Pressure** is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure and the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 43°F (6°C) temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 1 psi (6 kPa) in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

To check the pressure in your tire(s):

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.

**Note:** *If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, (for example, driven more than 1 mi (1.6 km)), never bleed or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.*

**Note:** *If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive.*

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure.
3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure.

**Note:** *If you overfill the tire, release air by pressing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.*

4. Replace the valve cap.
5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

# Wheels and Tires

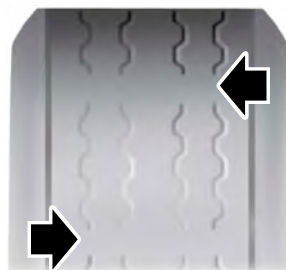
6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.
7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

## Inspecting Your Tires and Wheel Valve Stems

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check the tire and valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that may permit air leakage and repair or replace the tire and replace the valve stem. Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

## Tire Wear



E142546

When the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or wear bars, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 mm).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these wear bars, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

## Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional.



# Wheels and Tires

## Age



**WARNING:** Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.



**WARNING:** In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

## U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

## Tire Replacement Requirements

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.



**WARNING:** Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or the Tire Label which is located on

## Wheels and Tires

the B-Pillar or edge of the driver's door. If this information is not found on these labels, then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



**WARNING:** The use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. If you have questions regarding tire replacement, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.



**WARNING:** When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

- Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
- Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
- Stand at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.
- Use both eye and ear protection.



**WARNING:** For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.



**WARNING:** Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.

# Wheels and Tires

**Important:** Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, your system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system, or some component of the system may be damaged.

## Safety Practices



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud or sand, do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.



**WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 34 mph (55 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

## Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

- \*Observe posted speed limits.
- \*Avoid fast starts, stops and turns.
- \*Avoid potholes and objects on the road.
- \*Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking.

## Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there's always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, see

# Wheels and Tires

the instructions on use of the tire sealant and inflater kit at the beginning of this section. If the kit cannot provide a temporary tire inflation, contact an authorized dealer.

## Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you're driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front-wheel drive vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension (if equipped) may require alignment of all four wheels.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

## USING SUMMER TIRES

Your Ford GT was built with Michelin Pilot Sport Cup 2 tires which are a summer tire. Summer tires provide superior performance on wet and dry roads. Summer tires do not have the Mud and Snow (M+S or M/S) tire traction rating on the tire side wall. Since summer tires do

not have the same traction performance as All-season or Snow tires, we do not recommend using summer tires when temperatures drop to about 45°F (7°C) or below (depending on tire wear and environmental conditions) or in snow and ice conditions. Like any tire, summer tire performance is affected by tire wear and environmental conditions. If you must drive in those conditions, we recommend using Mud and Snow (M+S, M/S), All-season or Snow tires.

Always store your summer tires indoors at temperatures above 19°F (-7°C). The rubber compounds used in these tires lose flexibility and may develop surface cracks in the tread area at temperatures below 19°F (-7°C). If the tires have been subjected to 19°F (-7°C) or less, warm them in a heated space to at least 41°F (5°C) for at least 24 hours before installing them on a vehicle, or moving the vehicle with the tires installed, or checking tire inflation. Do not place tires near heaters or heating devices used to warm the room where the tires are stored. Do not apply heat or blow heated air directly on the tires. Always inspect the tires after storage periods and before use.

## USING SNOW CHAINS



**WARNING:** If you choose to install snow tires on your vehicle, they must be the same size, construction, and load range as the original tires listed on the tire placard, and they must be installed on all four wheels. Mixing tires of different size or construction on your vehicle can adversely affect your vehicle's handling and braking, and may lead to loss of vehicle control.

# Wheels and Tires



**WARNING:** Do not use snow chains or cables on this vehicle as they may cause damage to your vehicle which may lead to loss of vehicle control.

Snow chains have not been approved for use on your vehicle.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM



**WARNING:** The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



**WARNING:** If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.



Each tire should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale flashes for approximately one minute and then remains illuminated. This sequence continues upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

# Wheels and Tires

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Licence exempt RSS Standards of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

## Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System



E142549

**Note:** Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor is attached to the valve stem. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor

You should always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

Check the tire pressure periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge. See *Inflating Your Tires* in this chapter.

## Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System



The tire pressure monitoring system measures pressure in your road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. You can view the tire pressure readings through the information display. See **General Information** (page 74). The low tire pressure warning light turns on if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under-inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns on and a short time later turns off, your tire pressure still needs to be checked.

## When You Believe Your System is Not Operating Properly

The main function of the tire pressure monitoring system is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. See the following chart for information concerning your tire pressure monitoring system:

# Wheels and Tires

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Customer action required
Solid warning light	Tire(s) under-inflated	Make sure tires are at the proper pressure. See Inflating your tires in this chapter. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Flashing warning light	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## When Inflating Your Tires

**Note:** Do not use the tire pressure display screen as a tire pressure gauge, this can result in over or under inflation of a tire.

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the tire pressure monitoring system may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn off after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

## How Temperature Affects Your Tire Pressure

The tire pressure monitoring system monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. When driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase about 2–4 psi (14–28 kPa) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary overnight with the outside

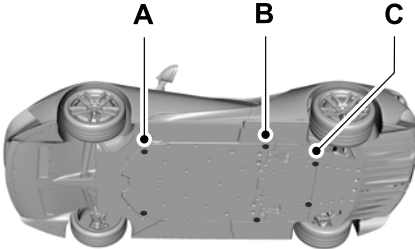
temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease about 3 psi (21 kPa) for a drop of 62.6°F (17°C) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may be detected by the tire pressure monitoring system as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the system warning light for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is on, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary. Check the air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

# Wheels and Tires

## CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

### Important Information for Lifting or Jacking

A vehicle jack is not included with your vehicle. If you are on the road and need to change a wheel, it is recommended that you contact the Ford GT Concierge to obtain roadside assistance. See **Special Notices** (page 11).



E228623

- A Front lift points
- B Middle lift points
- C Rear lift points

To avoid damage to your vehicle, use a low profile hydraulic jack when removing a road wheel. Only place the jack on one of the alloy lifting posts when lifting your vehicle. Do not lift your vehicle on the carbon fiber panels.

**Note:** *It is recommended that an interface be used between the alloy lifting point and the vehicle jack (for example, a hockey puck or dense rubber pad).*

## DRIVING AT HIGH SPEED

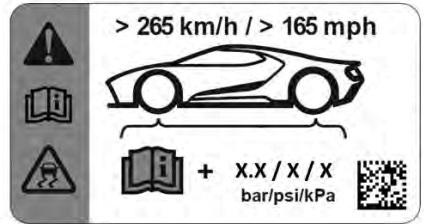
### Tire Pressure - Speeds Greater Than 165 mph (265 km/h)



**WARNING:** Always re-inflate tires to recommended tire pressures before the vehicle is operated on-road. The recommended pressure is located on the tire label or safety certification label, located on the B-pillar, inside the driver's door.

**Note:** *When driving over 165 mph (265 km/h), be sure to check and adjust your tire pressures accordingly.*

**Note:** *If you are not sure about the proper tire inflation pressures, contact an authorized dealer or service center.*



E247515

Your tires may require additional inflation pressure for operation at speeds greater than 165 mph (265 km/h). If this label is present on your vehicle, you must adjust the tire pressure accordingly.



# Wheels and Tires

## TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

### Wheel Lug Nut Torque Specifications



**WARNING:** When you install a wheel, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Bolt size	lb-ft (Nm)*
M14 X 1.5	150 lb.ft (204 Nm)

\*Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 100 miles (160 kilometers) after any wheel disturbance (such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal).



E145950

A Wheel pilot bore

Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

**Note:** The wheel stud length differs depending on the wheels equipped. The hub on carbon fiber wheels require longer wheel studs due to a thicker hub. If changing wheel types between alloy and carbon fiber, in either direction, you must also change the wheel studs to match the length required for that wheel type. Also use the longer studs for the carbon fiber wheels and then use open lug nuts if putting alloy wheels back on the car.

# Capacities and Specifications

---

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS

Measurement	Specification
Engine model.	3.5L EcoBoost GTDI
Engine displacement.	214 in <sup>3</sup> (3497 cm <sup>3</sup> )
Bore.	3.6 in (92.5 mm)
Stroke.	3.4 in (86.7 mm)
Compression ratio.	9:1
Normal engine idling speed.	800 RPM
Maximum engine speed. <sup>1</sup>	7000 RPM
Firing order.	1-4-2-5-3-6
Ignition system.	Coil on plug.
Spark plug gap.	0.030 in (0.75 mm)
Fuel quality.	Premium fuel only.

<sup>1</sup>As the engine reaches normal operating temperature, the allowable maximum engine speed (redline) increases.

# Capacities and Specifications

---

## MOTORCRAFT PARTS

Component	Part Number
Air filter element.	FA-1912-A <sup>1</sup>
Oil filter.	HG7Z-6731-A <sup>2</sup>
Battery.	HG7Z-10655-B <sup>2</sup>
Spark plugs.	SP-583 <sup>1</sup>
Cabin air filter.	FP-70 <sup>1</sup>
Windshield wipers. <sup>2</sup>	HG7Z-17528-A (right-hand side) HG7Z-17528-B (left-hand side)

<sup>1</sup>Motorcraft® part number.

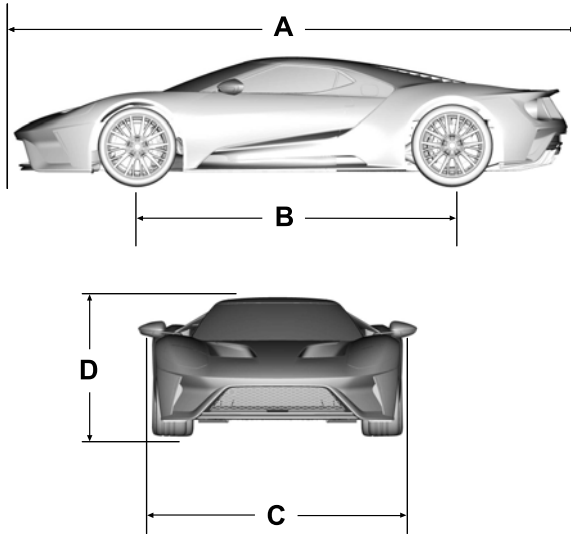
<sup>2</sup>Ford part number.

We recommend Ford and Motorcraft® replacement parts available at your local dealer or at [fordparts.com](http://fordparts.com) for scheduled maintenance. We engineer these parts for your vehicle and to meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications. Use of other parts may impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty may be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

For spark plug replacement, contact an authorized dealer. Replace the spark plugs at the appropriate intervals.

# Capacities and Specifications

## VEHICLE DIMENSIONS



E291810

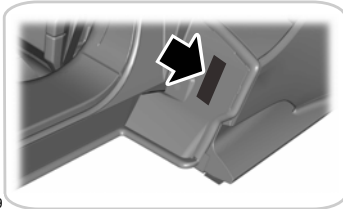
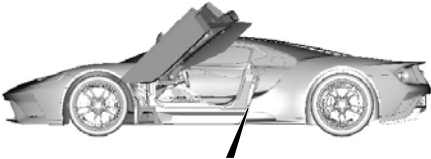
Item	Dimension	Specification
A	Overall length.	187.5 in (4,763 mm)
B	Wheelbase.	106.7 in (2,710 mm)
C	Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors.	78.9 in (2,004 mm)
C	Overall width with mirrors folded.	83.2 in (2,113 mm)
C	Overall width with mirrors extended.	88.1 in (2,238 mm)
D	Overall height without options (Normal drive mode).	43.7 in (1,109 mm)

# Capacities and Specifications

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

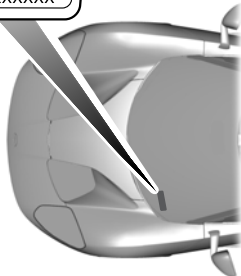
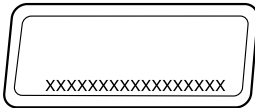
You can find the vehicle identification number at the following locations.

On the vehicle certification label inside the driver's door opening.



E227109

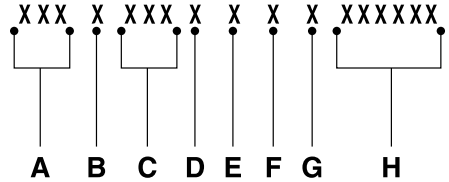
On the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



E252123

Please note that in the graphic, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.

The Vehicle Identification Number contains the following information:



E142477

- A World manufacturer identifier
- B Brake system, Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, Restraint Devices and their locations
- C Make, vehicle line, series, body type
- D Engine type
- E Check digit
- F Model year
- G Assembly plant
- H Production sequence number

# Capacities and Specifications

## VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.			
DATE: XX/XX	GVWR: XXXX KG (XXXX LB)		
FRONT GAWR: XXXX KG (XXXX LB)	REAR GAWR: XXXX KG (XXXX LB)		
THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY AND THEFT PREVENTION STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.			
VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	TYPE: XXXX		
MAXIMUM LOAD = OCCUPANTS + LUGGAGE = XXXKG/ XXXLB			
OCCUPANTS = X TOTAL; X FRONT, X REAR			
TIRE (FR): XXXXXXXXX XXX	RIMS (FR): XXXXX		
(RR): XXXXXXXXX XXX	(RR): XXXXX		
PRESSURE (FR): XXX kPa/ XX PSI COLD	(RR): XXX kPa/ XX PSI COLD		
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX			
TRAILER TOWING - SEE OWNER GUIDE			
EXT PNT:	RC: DSO: XXXX	XXXXX	
INT TR   TP/PS   TR   AXLE   TR   SPR			
XXX ∇XXXX-XXXXXX-XX			

E245288

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Safety Compliance Certification Label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Safety Compliance Certification Label may be located. The Safety Compliance Certification Label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, the door latch post, or the edge of the door near the door latch, next to the driver's seating position.

## TRANSMISSION CODE DESIGNATION

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.			
DATE: XX/XX	GVWR: XXXX KG (XXXX LB)		
FRONT GAWR: XXXX KG (XXXX LB)	REAR GAWR: XXXX KG (XXXX LB)		
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	WITH TIRES: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	WITH TIRES	
XXXXXXXXXX	RIMS: XXXXXXX	RIMS	
AT XXXX kPa/ XXX PSI COLD	AT XXXX kPa/ XXX PSI COLD		
THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY AND THEFT PREVENTION STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.			
VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX		XXXXX	
TYPE: XXXX		XXXXX	
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX			
EXT PNT: XX	RC: YY	DSO: XXXX	
WB   INT TR   TP/PS   TR   AXLE   TR   SPR			
XXX   XX   XXX   X   XX   X   XXXX   XXXX			
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX			
XX ∇=XXXX-XXXXXX-XX			

E167814

The transmission code is on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The following table shows the transmission code along with the transmission description.

Description	Code
Seven-speed DCT transmission	F

# Capacities and Specifications

## CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS

Use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you use oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade, this may lead to:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.

- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

## Air Conditioning System



**WARNING:** The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

## Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
All.	1.5 lb (0.68 kg)	4.7 fl oz (140 ml)

## Materials

Name	Specification
R-1234yf Refrigerant (U.S.) R-1234yf Refrigerant / Frigorigène R-1234yf (Canada) YN-33-A (U.S.) HS7Z-19B519-BA (Canada)	WSS-M17B21-A
Motorcraft® R-1234yf Refrigerant PAG Oil (U.S.) Motorcraft® R-1234yf Refrigerant PAG Oil / Huile PAG pour frigorigène R-1234yf Motorcraft® (Canada) YN-35 (U.S. & Canada)	WSS-M2C300-A2

## Transmission Gear

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	4.1 qt (3.9 L)

# Capacities and Specifications

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Ford GT Supercar Transaxle Lubricant (U.S.) Motorcraft® Ford GT Supercar Transaxle Lubricant / Ford GT Supercar Lubrifiant pour boîte-pont SAE 75W-90 Motorcraft® (Canada) XT-75W90-QSC (U.S. & Canada)	-

## Transmission Wet Clutch

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	9.1 qt (8.6 L)

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Ford GT Supercar Clutch Fluid (U.S.) Motorcraft® Ford GT Supercar Clutch Fluid / Ford GT Supercar huile d'embrayage Motorcraft® (Canada) XL-20 (U.S. & Canada)	-

## Engine Coolant

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	20.1 qt (19 L)



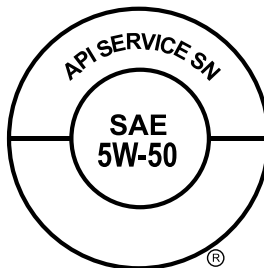
# Capacities and Specifications

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Orange Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant (U.S.) Motorcraft® Orange Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant / Antigel/liquide de refroidissement prédilué orange Motorcraft® (Canada) VC-3DIL-B (U.S.) CVC-3DIL-B (Canada)	WSS-M97B44-D2
Motorcraft® Yellow Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant (U.S.) Motorcraft® Yellow Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant / Antigel/liquide de refroidissement prédilué jaune Motorcraft® (Canada) VC-13DL-G (U.S.) CVC-13DL-G (Canada)	WSS-M97B57-A2

**Note:** Use the coolant type that originally came with your vehicle. For any questions regarding coolant, see your authorized dealer.

## Engine Oil



We recommend Castrol Edge Supercar 5W-50 motor oil for your vehicle. If this oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that meet our specification WSS-M2C931-C such as Motorcraft® 5W-50 labeled with API SN service category.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage not covered by your vehicle warranty.

# Capacities and Specifications

---

## Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Engine oil with oil filter (dry fill capacity).	15.3 qt (14.5 L)
Engine oil with oil filter (oil change refill capacity).	13.7 qt (13 L)

## Materials

Name	Specification
Castrol® EDGE® Supercar 5W-50 (U.S.) (Canada)	WSS-M2C931-C

## Fuel Tank

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	15.2 gal (57.54 L)

## Grease

### Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Grease Spray (U.S.) Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Grease Spray / Graisse tout usage en aérosol Motorcraft® (Canada) XL-5-A (U.S. & Canada)	ESB-MIC93-B

## Locks

# Capacities and Specifications

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Penetrating and Lock Lubricant (U.S.) Motorcraft® Penetrating Fluid / Liquide dégrissant Motorcraft® (Canada) XL-1 (U.S.) CXC-51-A (Canada)	-

## Hydraulic Brake System

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	1.1 qt (1.04 L)

## Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid	WSS-M6C57-A2

**Note:** We recommend using DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid or equivalent meeting WSS-M6C57-A2. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause degraded brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage and possible failure.

## Hydraulic Power Steering, Active Suspension, and Active Aero System

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	6.3 qt (6 L)

# Capacities and Specifications

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® MERCON® LV Automatic Transmission Fluid (U.S.) Motorcraft® MERCON® LV Automatic Transmission Fluid / Huile pour boîte automatique MERCON® LV Motorcraft® (Canada) XT-10-QLVC (U.S.) CXC-10-LV6 (Canada)	MERCON® LV WSS-M2C938-A

## Washer Reservoir

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	0.5 gal (1.89 L)

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant (U.S.) Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid / Liquide lave-glacé de haute qualité Motorcraft® (Canada) ZC-32-B2 (U.S.) CXC-37-A/B/D/F (Canada)	WSS-M14P19-A

# Audio System

---

## AUDIO UNIT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can access your audio features with the touchscreen and steering wheel controls. See your SYNC information.

The power button is to the left of the display screen.

## USB PORT

The USB port is on the bottom of the instrument panel.

The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices (if supported). See your SYNC information.

## GENERAL INFORMATION



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

### About SYNC

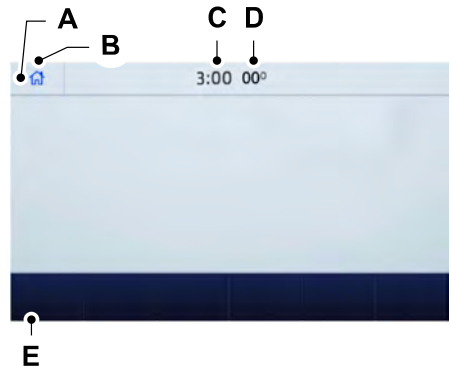
The system allows you to interact with the entertainment, information and communication systems on your vehicle using voice commands and a touchscreen. The system provides easy interaction with audio, phone, navigation, mobile apps and settings.

**Note:** You can switch the system on and use it for up to an hour without switching the ignition on.

**Note:** You can use the system after you switch the ignition off for up to 10 minutes or until you open a door.

**Note:** For your safety, some features are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle speed is less than 3 mph (5 km/h).

## Using the Touchscreen



- A Status bar.
- B Home screen.
- C Clock. See **Settings** (page 247).
- D Outside air temperature.
- E Feature bar.

### Status Bar



Cell phone microphone muted.



Audio system muted.



Software update installed.



Wi-Fi connected.



Cell phone roaming.



Text message received.



Automatic crash notification system off.



Cell phone network signal strength.

## Feature Bar



Select to use the radio, a USB, a media player or a Bluetooth device. See **Entertainment** (page 228).



Select to adjust climate settings



Select to make calls and access the phonebook on your cell phone. See **Phone** (page 238).



Select to use the navigation system. See **Navigation** (page 240).



Select to search for and use compatible apps on your iOS or Android device. See **Apps** (page 245).



Select to adjust system settings. See **Settings** (page 247).

## Cleaning the Touchscreen

See **Cleaning the Interior** (page 178).

## Updating the System

### Updating the System Using a USB Drive

#### Downloading an Update

1. Go to the SYNC update page on the local Ford website.
2. Download the update.

**Note:** *The website notifies you if an update is available.*

3. Insert a USB drive into your computer.

**Note:** *The USB drive needs to be empty and meet the minimum requirements detailed on the website.*

4. Follow the instructions provided to download the update to the USB drive.

#### Installing an Update

**Note:** *You can use the system when an installation is in progress.*

1. Disconnect all other USB devices from the USB ports.
2. Connect the USB drive with the update to a USB port.

**Note:** *Installation starts automatically within 10 minutes.*

### Updating the System Using a Wi-Fi Network Connection

#### Connecting to a Wi-Fi Network



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Automatic Updates**.
2. Select **System Wi-Fi**.
3. Switch **System Wi-Fi** on.
4. Select **Available Wi-Fi Networks**.
5. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

**Note:** *Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.*

#### Switching Automatic System Updates On



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Automatic Updates**.
2. Switch **Automatic System Updates** on.

The system is now set to check for and receive system updates when it is connected to a Wi-Fi network.

# SYNC™ 3

**Note:** You can use the system when a download is in progress.

**Note:** If the system is disconnected from the Wi-Fi network when a download is in progress, the download continues the next time the system is connected to a Wi-Fi network.

## Additional Information and Assistance

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer or refer to the local Ford website.

## USING VOICE RECOGNITION

The SYNC 3 system allows you to use voice commands, to control features like audio and climate controls. By using voice commands, you can keep your hands on the wheel and your eyes on the road.

You can access each feature controlled by SYNC 3 through a variety of commands.



To activate the SYNC 3 voice commands push the voice button on the steering wheel and wait for the prompt.

\_\_\_ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it can be the name of anything, such as artist, the name of contact or number. The context and the description of the command tell you what to say for this dynamic option.

There are some commands that work for every feature, these commands are:

Voice Command	Action and Description
Main Menu	Brings you to the main menu.
Go back	Returns you to the previous screen.
Cancel	Ends the voice session.
List of Commands	Gives you a list of possible voice commands.
___ List of Commands	You can name any feature and the system gives a list of commands available for the feature. For example, you could say: Phone List of Commands Navigation List of Commands
Next Page	You can use this command to view the next page of options on any screen where multiple pages of choices are given.
Previous Page	You can use this command to view the previous page of options on any screen where multiple pages of choices are given.
Help	Gives you available commands you can use on the current screen.



# SYNC™ 3

Included here are some of the most popular commands for each SYNC 3 feature.

## Audio Voice Commands

\_\_\_ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for audio voice commands it can be the name of a Sirius channel or a channel number, a radio frequency number, or the name of an artist, album, song or a genre.

**To control the media features, press the voice button and when prompted, say:**

Voice command	Description
Sirius Channel ___ <sup>1</sup>	You can say the Sirius channel name or number such as "Sirius channel 16".
You can also turn to a Sirius channel by saying the channel's name, such as "The Pulse".	
AM ___ FM ___	Allows you to tune to a specific FM or AM frequency such as "FM 88.7" or "AM 1580".
FM ___ HD ___ <sup>1</sup>	Allows you to tune to a specific HD frequency such as "FM 88.7 HD 1".
Bluetooth Audio	Allows you to listen to music on your Bluetooth connected device.
USB	Allows you to listen to music on your USB connected device.
Play Genre ___ Play Playlist ___ Play Artist ___ Play Album ___ Play Podcast ___ Play Song ___ Play Audiobook ___	For USB audio only, you can say the name of an artist, album, song or a genre to listen to that selection. Your system must finish indexing before this option is available. For example, you could say "Play artist The Beatles" or "Play song Penny Lane".
Browse ___ Browse Artist ___ Browse Album ___ Browse Genre ___ Browse Playlist ___	For USB audio only, you can say the name of an artist, album, or a genre to browse by that selection. Your system must finish indexing before this option is available. For example you can say "Browse artist The Beatles" or "Browse genre folk".

# SYNC™ 3

Voice command	Description
Browse Audiobook ___ Browse Podcast ___	

<sup>1</sup> This option may not be available in all markets or may require a subscription.

## Climate Voice Commands (If Equipped)

You can control the temperature of the vehicle using voice commands.

\_\_\_ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for climate voice commands it can be the desired degrees for the temperature setting.

### To adjust the temperature, say:

Voice command	Description
Set Temperature ___	Adjust the temperature between 60–85°F (15.5–29.5°C).

## Phone Voice Commands

### Pairing a Phone

You can use voice commands to connect your Bluetooth enabled phone to the system.

### To pair your phone, press the voice button and when prompted, say:

Voice command	Description
Pair Phone	Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the pairing process. See <b>Settings</b> (page 247).

## Making Calls

\_\_\_ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for phone voice commands it can be the name of the contact you wish to call or the digits you want to dial.

# SYNC™ 3

**Press the voice button and say a command similar to the following:**

Voice command	Description
Call ___	Allows you to call a specific contact from your phonebook such as "Call Jenny".
Call ___ at ___	Allows you to call a specific contact from your phonebook at a specific location such as "Call Jenny at Home".
Dial ___	Allows you to dial a specific number such as "Dial 867-5309".

Please make sure that you are saying the contact name exactly as it appears in your contact list.

**Once you have provided the digits of the phone number, you can say the following commands:**

Voice Command	Description
<0-9>	If you did not enter the full number with the first command, you can continue saying the number.
Dial	Tells SYNC 3 to make the phone call.
Delete	Tells SYNC 3 to erase the last block of digits you state.
Clear	Tells SYNC 3 to erase the entire number.

## Text Message Voice Commands

**To access text message options, press the voice button and say:**

Voice command	Description
Listen to Message	
Listen to text message ___	You can say the number of the message you would like to hear.
Reply to Message	

# SYNC™ 3

## Navigation Voice Commands (If Equipped)

### Setting a Destination

You can use any of the following commands to set a destination or find a

point of interest.

\_\_\_ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for navigation voice commands it can be a POI category or a major brand name, where major brand name is a chain with more than 20 locations

### You can find an address, a point of interest (POI), or search for points of interest by category:

Voice command	Description
Find an Address	Allows you to enter the address search functionality. You can also search for an address in a specific state or province.
Find a ___	State the name of the POI category or major brand name you would like to search for such as "Find restaurants".
Find a POI	Allows you to enter the POI search functionality.
Find an Intersection	Allows you to enter the intersection search functionality.
Find the Nearest <POI Category>	State the name of a POI category or major brand name you would like to search for.
Show Previous Destinations	Allows you to see a list of your previous destinations.
Show Favorites	Allows you to see a list of your favorite destinations.
Drive Home	Allows you to route to your home address.
Drive to Work	Allows you to route to your work address.

### In addition, you can say these commands when a route is active:

Voice command	Description
Cancel Route	Cancels the current route.
Detour	Allows you to select an alternate route.
Repeat Instruction	Repeats the last guidance prompt.
Show Route	Displays the active route.
Route Summary	Displays the list of upcoming maneuvers.

# SYNC™ 3

Voice command	Description
Where Am I	Provides current location.
Zoom in	Allows you to zoom in on the map.
Zoom out	Allows you to zoom out from the map.

## Mobile App Voice Commands (If Equipped)

The following voice commands are always available:

Voice command	Description
Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will prompt you to say the name of an app to start it on SYNC 3.
List Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will list all of the currently available Mobile Apps.
Find Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will search and connect to compatible app(s) running on your mobile device.

There are also voice commands that you can use when app(s) are connected to SYNC 3:

Voice command	Description
Say the name of an app	At any time, you can say the name of a mobile app to start the mobile app on SYNC 3.
Say the name of an app, followed by help	SYNC 3 will list the available voice commands for the specified app if the app is running on SYNC 3.

## SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link Voice Commands (If Equipped)

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link may not be available in all markets. Activation and a subscription are required.

# SYNC™ 3

## You can say the following commands to access SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link:

Voice command	Description
Show Traffic	Displays a list of traffic incidents.
Show Weather Map	Displays the current weather map.
Show Fuel Prices	Displays a list of fuel prices.
Show 5 Day Forecast	Displays the 5 day weather forecast.
Help	

## Voice Settings Commands

### You can say the following commands to access the voice settings:

Voice command	Description
Voice Settings	Allows you to enter the voice settings functionality.
Interaction Mode Standard	Sets standard prompting with longer prompts.
Interaction Mode Advanced	Sets advanced prompting with shorter prompts.
Call Confirmation On	Allows the system to confirm before making a phone call.
Call Confirmation Off	The system does not confirm before placing a call.
Voice Command Lists On	The system displays a short list of available commands.
Voice Command Lists Off	The system does not display the list of commands.

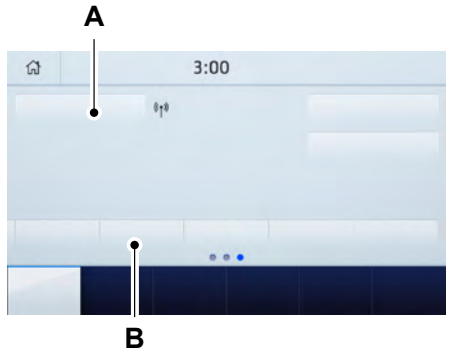
You can use the volume control to adjust the volume of the system voice prompts. While prompt is active, adjust the volume control up or down to your desired setting.

**Note:** Depending on the current climate control settings, the fan speed may automatically go down while issuing voice commands or while making and receiving phone calls via SYNC to reduce the amount of background noise in the vehicle. The fan speed will automatically return to normal operation once the voice session ends. You can adjust the fan speed during a voice session, simply press the fan buttons (or turn the fan knob) to increase or decrease the fan speed to the setting you prefer.

# SYNC™ 3

To disable this automatic fan speed reduction feature during voice sessions, press and hold the climate control AC and Recirculated air buttons simultaneously, release and then increase fan speed within 2 seconds. To re-enable this feature, repeat the above sequence.

## ENTERTAINMENT



- A Audio source. Select to choose a different audio source.
- B Presets. Swipe left to view more presets.

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

### Sources

Press this button to select the source of media you want to listen to.

Menu Item	
AM	
FM	
SIRIUS	1
CD	1
USB	The name of the USB that is plugged in displays here.

# SYNC™ 3

Menu Item	
Bluetooth Stereo	
Apps	If you have SYNC 3 compatible apps on your connected smart phone, they display here as individual source selections.

<sup>1</sup> This feature may not be available in all markets and requires an active subscription.

## AM/FM Radio

### Tuning a Station

You can use the tune or seek controls on the radio bezel to select a station.

### To tune a station using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item
Direct Tune

A pop up appears, allowing you to type in the frequency of a station. You can only enter a valid station for the source you are currently listening to.

You can press the backspace button to delete the previously entered number.

### Once you have entered the station's call numbers, you can select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Enter	Press to begin playing the station you have entered.
Cancel	Press to exit without changing the station.

### Presets

To set a new preset, tune to the station and then press and hold one of the memory preset buttons. The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the station and then returns.

You may be able to add additional preset pages using the settings option on the feature bar.

### SiriusXM® Satellite Radio (If Activated)

**Note:** *This feature may not be available in all markets and requires an active subscription.*



E234451



# SYNC™ 3

SiriusXM satellite radio is a subscription-based satellite radio service that broadcasts a variety of music, sports, news, weather, traffic and entertainment programming. Your factory-installed SiriusXM satellite radio system includes hardware and a limited subscription term that begins on the date of sale or lease of your vehicle. See an authorized dealer for availability.

For more information on extended subscription terms (a service fee is required), the online media player and a list of SiriusXM satellite radio channels, and other features, please visit [www.siriusxm.com](http://www.siriusxm.com) in the United States, [www.siriusxm.ca](http://www.siriusxm.ca) in Canada, or call SiriusXM at 1-888-539-7474.

**Note:** *SiriusXM reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming. This includes canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. We are not responsible for any such programming changes.*

**Note:** *This receiver includes the eCos real-time operating system. eCos is published under the eCos License.*

## The following buttons are available for SiriusXM:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Browse	Touch this button to see a list of available stations.	
Direct Tune	A pop-up appears, allowing you to type in the call numbers of a station. Once you enter the stations call numbers, you can select:	
	Enter	The system tunes to the station you select.
	Cancel	You exit the pop-up and the current station continues to play.
	You can press the backspace button to delete the previous number.	
Replay	Replay audio on the current channel. You can replay approximately 45 minutes of audio as long as you remain tuned to the current station. Changing stations erases the previous audio.	
	Live	When you are in replay mode, you are not able to select a different preset until you return to live audio. Pressing this button returns you to the live broadcast.
ALERT	Save the current song, artist, or team as a favorite. The system alerts you when it plays again on any channel.	

# SYNC™ 3

Menu Item	Action and Description
	Selecting this button allows you to enable and edit alerts. See <b>Settings</b> (page 247).

## Memory Presets

To set a preset, tune to the station then press and hold one of the memory preset buttons. The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the station and returns once the station is stored.

You may be able to add additional preset pages using the settings option on the feature bar.

## Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN)

You need your ESN to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. See **Settings** (page 247).

## SiriusXM Satellite Radio Reception Factors and Troubleshooting

Potential Reception Issues	
Antenna obstructions	For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other materials as far away from the antenna as possible.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast-repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and the audio system may mute.
Satellite radio signal interference	Your display may show ACQUIRING... to indicate the interference and the audio system may mute.

# SYNC™ 3

Troubleshooting Tips		
Message	Cause	Action
Acquiring Signal	Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.	No action required. This message should disappear shortly.
Satellite antenna fault SIRIUS system failure	There is an internal module or system failure present.	If this message does not clear shortly, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See an authorized dealer for service.
Invalid Channel	The channel is no longer available.	Tune to another channel or choose another preset.
Unsubscribed Channel	Your subscription does not include this channel.	Contact SiriusXM at 1-888-539-7474 to subscribe to the channel, or tune to another channel.
Satellite acquiring signal...	The signal is lost from the SiriusXM satellite or SiriusXM tower to your vehicle antenna.	The signal is blocked. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
Updating...	Update of channel programming in progress.	No action required. The process may take up to three minutes.
Questions? Call 1-888-539-7474	Your satellite service is no longer available.	Contact SiriusXM at 1-888-539-7474 to resolve subscription issues.
None found. Check channel guide.	All the channels in the selected category are either skipped or locked.	Use the channel guide or the Sirius XM Settings tile to turn off the Lock or Skip function on that station.
SIRIUS Subscription updated	SiriusXM has updated the channels available for your vehicle.	No action required.

**Note:** HD Radio broadcasts are not available in all markets.

## HD Radio™ Information (If Available)

To activate HD radio, please see the Radio Settings in the Settings Chapter. See **Settings** (page 247).

# SYNC™ 3

HD Radio technology is the digital evolution of analog AM/FM radio. Your system has a special receiver that allows it to receive digital broadcasts (where available) in addition to the analog broadcasts, it already receives. Digital broadcasts provide a better sound quality than analog broadcasts with free, crystal-clear audio and no static or distortion. For more information, and a guide to available stations and programming, please visit:

<b>Website</b>
<a href="http://www.hdradio.com">www.hdradio.com</a>

When HD Radio is on and you tune to a station broadcasting HD Radio technology, you may notice the following indicators on your screen:



E142616

The HD logo is grey when acquiring a digital station, and then changes to orange when digital audio is playing. When this logo is available, you may also see Title and Artist fields on-screen.

The multicast indicator appears in FM mode (only) if the current station is broadcasting multiple digital broadcasts. The highlighted numbers signify available digital channels where new or different content is available. HD1 signifies the main programming status and is available in analog and digital broadcasts. Other multicast stations (HD2 through HD7) are only available digitally.

**Note:** *There is also an additional feature for stations that have more than 1 HD multicast (For example, HD1 or HD2). The HD logo and Radio text appears as a button. Pressing this button allows you to cycle through all of the HD stations on that specific frequency. For example, if you are on 101.1 and it has HD1, HD2, HD3, pressing the button repeatedly causes the radio to cycle through the HD stations in a cyclic increasing order.*

## When HD Radio broadcasts are active, you can access the following functions:

Message	Action and Description
Presets	Allows you to save an active channel as a memory preset. Touch and hold a memory preset slot until the sound returns. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the station. Sound returns when the channel saves. When switching to an HD2 or HD3 memory preset, the sound mutes before the digital audio plays, because the system has to reacquire the digital signal.

**Note:** *As with any station you save, you cannot access the saved station if your vehicle is outside the station's reception area.*

# SYNC™ 3

## HD Radio Reception and Station Troubleshooting

Potential Reception Issues	
Reception area	<p>If you are listening to a multicast station and you are on the fringe of the reception area, the station may mute due to weak signal strength.</p> <p>If you are listening to HD1, the system changes back to the analog broadcast until the digital broadcast is available again. However, if you are listening to any of the possible HD2-HD7 multicast channels, the station mutes and stays muted unless it is able to connect to the digital signal again.</p>
Station blending	<p>When the system first receives a station (aside from HD2-HD7 multicast stations), it first plays the station in the analog version. Once the receiver verifies the station is an HD Radio station, it shifts to the digital version. Depending on the station quality, you may hear a slight sound change when the station changes from analog to digital. Blending is the shift from analog to digital sound or digital back to analog sound.</p>

In order to provide the best possible experience, use the contact form to report any station issues found while listening to a station broadcasting with HD Radio technology. Independent entities own and operate each station. These stations are responsible for ensuring all audio streams and data fields are accurate.

Potential Station Issues		
Issues	Cause	Action
Echo, stutter, skip or repeat in audio. Increase or decrease in audio volume.	This is poor time alignment by the radio broadcaster.	No action required. This is a broadcast issue.
Sound fading or blending in and out.	The radio is shifting between analog and digital audio.	No action required. The reception issue may clear up as you continue to drive.
There is an audio mute delay when selecting HD2 or HD3, multicast preset or Direct Tune.	The digital multicast is not available until the HD Radio broadcast is decoded. Once decoded, the audio is available.	No action required. This is normal behavior. Wait until the audio is available.

# SYNC™ 3

Potential Station Issues		
Issues	Cause	Action
Cannot access HD2 or HD3 multicast channel when recalling a preset or from a direct tune.	The previously stored multicast preset or direct tune is not available in your current reception area.	No action required. The station is not available in your current location.
Text information does not match currently playing audio.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form. <sup>1</sup>
There is no text information shown for currently selected frequency.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form. <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> You can find the form here:

Website
<a href="http://hdradio.com/stations/feedback">http://hdradio.com/stations/feedback</a>

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation and foreign patents. HD Radio and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of DTS. The vehicle manufacturer and DTS are not responsible for the content sent using HD Radio technology. Content may be changed, added or deleted at any time at the station owner's discretion.

## CD (If equipped)

Once you select this option, the system returns you to the main audio screen.

The current audio information appears on the screen.

## The following buttons are also available:

Button	Function
Browse	You can use the browse button to select a track.
Repeat	Select this button and a small number one displays to indicate the track is set to repeat.

# SYNC™ 3

Button	Function
	For MP3 CDs, this button allows you to toggle through repeat off, repeat one track (a small number one displays), and repeat current folder (a small folder displays).
Shuffle	Select the shuffle symbol to have the audio on the disk play in random order.

You can use the forward, reverse, pause or play buttons to control the audio playback.

## Bluetooth Stereo or USB

Bluetooth Stereo and USB allow you to access media that you store on your Bluetooth device or USB device such as music, audio books or podcasts.

### The following buttons are available for Bluetooth and USB:

Button	Function
Repeat	Pressing the repeat button toggles the repeat setting through three modes: repeat off (button not highlighted), repeat all (button highlighted) and repeat track (button highlighted with a small number one).
Shuffle	Play the tracks in random order.

You can use the forward, reverse, pause or play buttons to control the audio playback.

To get more information about the currently playing track, press the cover art or Info button.

For some devices, SYNC 3 is able to provide 30-second skip buttons when you listen to audio books or podcasts. These buttons allow you to skip forward or backward within a track.

While playing audio from a USB device you can look for certain music by selecting the following:

Button	Function
Browse	If available, displays the list of tracks in the Now Playing playlist.
New Search	This option, which is available under browse, allows you to play all tracks or to filter the available media into one of the below categories.
	Play All

# SYNC™ 3

Button	Function
	Playlists
	Artist
	Albums
	Songs
	Genres
	Podcasts
	Audio books
	Composers
A-Z Jump	This button allows you to choose a specific letter to view within the category you are browsing.
Explore Device	If available, this allows you to browse the folders and files on your USB device.

## USB Ports



E211463

The USB ports are in the center console or behind a small access door in the instrument panel.

This feature allows you to plug in USB media devices, memory sticks, flash drives or thumb drives, and charge devices if they support this feature.

Select this option to play audio from your USB device.

## Apps

The system supports the use of certain audio apps such as iHeartRadio through a USB or Bluetooth enabled device.

Each app gives you different on-screen options depending on the app's content. See **Apps** (page 245).

## Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information

The system is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player, including iPod, iPhone, and most USB drives.

Supported audio formats include MP3, WMA, WAV, AAC, and FLAC.

Supported audio file extensions include MP3, WMA, WAV, M4A, M4B, AAC, and FLAC.



Supported USB file systems include: FAT, exFAT, and NTFS.

SYNC 3 is also able to organize the media from your USB device by metadata tags. Metadata tags, which are descriptive software identifiers embedded in the media files, provide information about the file.

If your indexed media files contain no information embedded in these metadata tags, SYNC 3 may classify the empty metadata tags as unknown.

SYNC 3 is capable of indexing up to 50,000 songs per USB device, for up to 10 devices.

## PHONE



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Check the compatibility of your device on the regional website.

### Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

Go to the settings menu on your cell phone and switch Bluetooth on.



Select the phone option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Add Phone**.

**Note:** A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your cell phone.

2. Select your vehicle on your cell phone.

**Note:** A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.

3. Confirm that the number on your cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.

**Note:** The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your cell phone.

4. Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

**Note:** If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting at any time.

## Using Your Cell Phone

### Recent Call List

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

### Contacts

Display a smart search form to look up your contacts. Use the List button to alphabetically sort your contacts.

### Change Device

Display the list of paired or connected devices that you can select.

### Phone Settings

Change ring tones, alerts or pair another phone.

### Do Not Disturb

Reject incoming calls and switch ring tones and alerts off.

## Phone Keypad

Directly dial a number.

## Mute

Mute the microphone.

## Text Messaging

### Setting Text Message Notification

#### iOS

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.

2. Select Bluetooth.
3. Select the information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on.

#### Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select Bluetooth.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile.
5. Switch text message notification on.

## Using Text Messaging

Menu Item	Description
Hear It	Hear the text message.
View	View the text message.
Call	Call the sender.
Reply	Reply to the text message with a standard text message.

## Apple CarPlay (If Equipped)

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Apple CarPlay.

### Switching Apple CarPlay Off



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Apple CarPlay Preferences**.
2. Switch **Apple CarPlay** off.

2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

**Note:** You might need to enable Android Auto from the settings menu.

**Note:** Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.

### Switching Android Auto Off



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Android Auto**.
2. Switch **Android Auto** off.

## Android Auto (If Equipped)

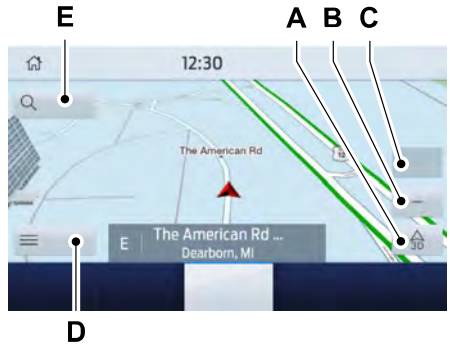
1. Connect your device to a USB port.

## NAVIGATION (IF EQUIPPED)

**Note:** For more information, refer to our website.



Select the navigation option on the feature bar.



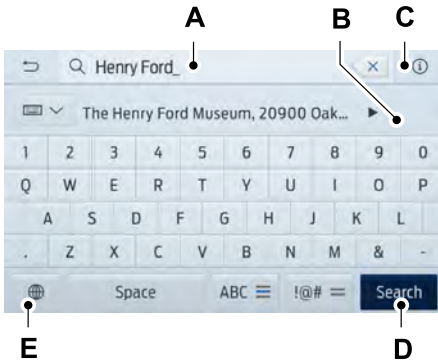
- A Map view menu.
- B Zoom out.
- C Zoom in.
- D Route guidance menu.
- E Destination entry menu.

## Setting a Destination

### Destination Entry Menu

Item	Description
Search	Enter a destination address.
Previous Destinations	Display and select from a list of previous destinations.
Home	Set your saved home address as your destination
Work	Set your saved place of work as your destination.
Favorites	Display and select from a list of favorite destinations.

## Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen



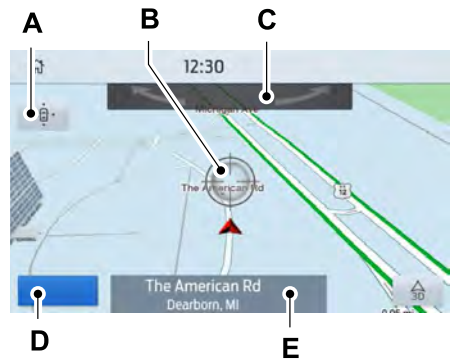
- A Text entry field.
- B Automatic suggestions based on the text you enter.
- C Information icon.
- D Search.
- E Keyboard settings.

**Note:** Select one of the suggestions to copy the detail to the text entry field.

**You can search by entering all or part of the destination, such as the Address, POI Category or Name, Intersection, City, Latitude/Longitude, etc. Tips: If you do not specify a location, the system will use the current vehicle location. You can specify a location by address, city, state or zip code. For additional search support, please visit: [support.ford.com](http://support.ford.com).**

**Note:** Press the button in the top right-hand corner of the main map to display estimated time of arrival, remaining travel time or distance to destination.

## Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen



- A Re-center the map.
- B Selected location.
- C 3D map rotation. Swipe left or right.
- D Start route guidance.
- E Destination name.

Select the location on the map.

Select **Start** to begin route guidance.

## Changing the Format of the Map

Display the map in one of the following formats:

- A two-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the top of the screen.
- A two-dimensional map with north toward the top of the screen.
- A three-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the front.

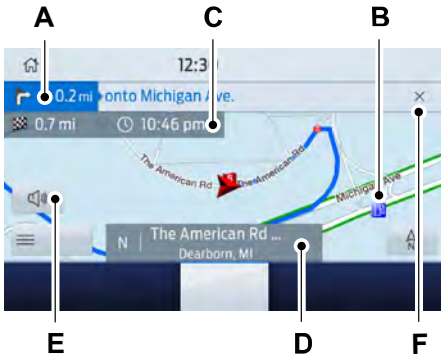
## Zoom

Display more or less detail on the map.

# SYNC™ 3

**Note:** You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the screen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the screen and bring them together to zoom out.

## Route Guidance



- C Estimated time of arrival, distance to destination or time to destination.
- D Current road.
- E Mute guidance prompts.
- F Cancel route guidance.

**Note:** To change guidance prompt volume, turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays.

- A Turn indicator. Select to hear the last voice prompt.
- B Point of interest.

## Route Guidance Menu

Menu Item	Description
Screen View	Adjust your map preferences for when route guidance is active.
Full Map	View a full screen map when route guidance is active.
Highway Exit Info	View highway exit information for your current route.
Turn List	View the turn list for your current route. Select a road to avoid it.
Traffic List	You can find the SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link information by pressing this button. This information requires an active subscription to SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link. When a route is not active, a list of nearby traffic incidents displays. When a route is active, you can choose to display a list of traffic nearby or on the route.

Menu Item	Description
Navigation Settings	Adjust navigation settings. See <b>Settings</b> (page 247).
Where Am I?	View information about your current location.
Cancel Route	Cancel route guidance.
View Route	View the entire current route on the map.
Detour	View an alternative route compared to your current one.
Edit Waypoints	Change the order or remove waypoints.
Optimize Order	The system determines the order of waypoints for you.
Go	Go to the next screen and start the new route.

## Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

**Note:** *If you have inadvertently adjusted the volume to zero, press the turn indicator button to play the last voice prompt and then adjust the volume to the desired level.*

## Muting Guidance Prompts



Select the mute option on the screen to mute guidance prompts.

**Note:** *The system mutes the next and all future guidance prompts.*

## Adding Waypoints

You can add a waypoint to a navigation route as a destination along your route. You can add up to five waypoints.

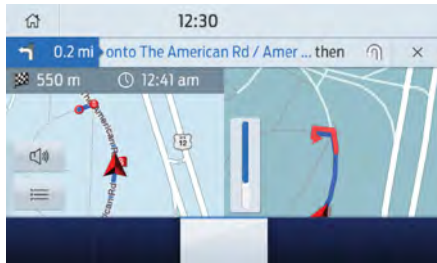
1. Select the search option on the map.
2. Set a destination.
3. Select **Add Waypoint**.
4. Select **Go**.

## Canceling Route Guidance



Select the route guidance menu option on the active guidance screen.

Select **Cancel Route**.



**Note:** *The route guidance menu option is always in the bottom right-hand corner of the main map.*

## cityseeker (If Equipped)

**Note:** *cityseeker point of interest (POI) information is limited to approximately 1,110 cities (1,049 in the United States, 36 in Canada and 15 in Mexico).*



E225487

cityseeker, when available, is a service that provides more information about certain points of interest such as restaurants, hotels and attractions.

When you have selected a point of interest, the location and information appear, such as address, phone number and a star rating.

Press **More Information** to see a photo, a review, a list of services and facilities, the average room or meal price and the web address. This screen displays the point of interest icons.

For restaurants, cityseeker can provide information such as star rating, average cost, review, handicap access, hours of operation, and website address.

For hotels, cityseeker can provide information such as star rating, price category, review, check-in and checkout times, hotel service icons and website address. Hotel service icons include:

- Restaurant
- Business center
- Handicap facilities
- Laundry
- Refrigerator
- 24 hour room service
- Fitness center
- Internet access
- Pool
- Wi-Fi

Attractions include nearby landmarks, amusement parks, historic buildings and more. cityseeker can provide information such as star rating, reviews, hour of operation and admission price.

### **SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link (if Equipped)**

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link is available on vehicles equipped with navigation and only in select markets. You must activate and subscribe to receive SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link information. It helps you locate the best gas prices, find movie listings, get current traffic alerts, view the weather map, get accurate ski conditions and see current sports scores.

The system calculates a reasonable efficient route based on available speed limits, traffic, and road conditions. You may know a local short cut that is more efficient at a given time than the route provided by SYNC 3, but you should expect a slight difference in minutes or miles with the SYNC 3 route.

### **Michelin Travel Guide (if Equipped)**

The Michelin travel guide is a service which provides additional information about certain places of interest, for example restaurants, hotels and tourist sites. Points of interest that have Michelin travel guide information display a button to show you more information. Push the button to see the additional information. If you have paired your phone with the system, you can press the phone button to directly establish a call with the selected point of interest.

## Navigation Map Accuracy and Updates

HERE is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you may report them directly to HERE by going to [www.here.com](http://www.here.com). HERE evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

The navigation system map data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results. Inaccurate speed limit information, turn restrictions and other road attributes may affect the determined route and associated guidance.

Annual navigation map updates are available for purchase through your dealership. Depending on your purchase agreement, you might be eligible for free Map update. You can choose to download the Map data update onto a USB, order a USB, or use Wi-Fi to deliver automatic updates. To update your Map data over Wi-Fi, your vehicle must be connected to a Wi-Fi access point. Map Data files are large, so it is highly recommended to perform the update when free Wi-Fi is available otherwise high data rates may apply. For USB updates, free map update eligibility, and other details, contact dealers at 1-866-462-8837 in the United States and Canada or 01-800-557-5539 in Mexico or visit our local website for more information.

## APPS

The system allows you interact with select mobile apps while keeping your eyes on the road. Voice commands, your steering wheel buttons, or a quick tap on your touchscreen give you advanced control of compatible mobile apps. You can also stream your favorite music or podcasts, share your time of arrival with friends, and keep connected safely.

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges. We also recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app. Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system. Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

**Note:** For more information about available apps, visit [catalog.ford.com](http://catalog.ford.com).

## Using Apps on an iOS Device



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. If your device is connected via USB, switch Apple CarPlay off. See **Phone** (page 238).
2. Connect your device to a USB port or pair and connect using Bluetooth.
3. If prompted to enable CarPlay, select **Disable**.
4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through SYNC.



# SYNC™ 3

**Note:** If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Connect your device to a USB port if you want to use a navigation app. When using a navigation app, keep your device unlocked and the app open.

## Using Apps on an Android Device



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. If your device is connected via USB, switch Android Auto off. See **Phone** (page 238).
2. Pair your device. See **Phone** (page 238).
3. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through SYNC.

**Note:** If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

4. Select **Find Mobile Apps**.

**Note:** The system searches and connects to compatible apps that are running on your device.

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Mobile Apps on your device use the USB port to establish a connection with SYNC. Some devices may lose the ability to play music over USB when Mobile Apps are enabled.

## Using Mobile Navigation on an Android Device

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Switch Android Auto off. See **Phone** (page 238).
3. Select on **Enable Mobile Apps via USB** in the Mobile Apps Settings tile.

4. Select the apps option on the feature bar.
5. Select the navigation app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** When using a navigation app, keep your device unlocked and the app open.

## SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link may not be available in all markets.

**Note:** In order to use SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link, your vehicle must have navigation.

**Note:** A paid subscription is required to access and use these features. Go to [www.siriusxm.com/travellink](http://www.siriusxm.com/travellink) for more information.

**Note:** Visit [www.siriusxm.com/traffic](http://www.siriusxm.com/traffic) and click on Coverage map and details for a complete listing of all traffic areas covered by SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link.

**Note:** Neither Sirius nor Ford is responsible for any errors or inaccuracies in the SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link services or its use in vehicles.

# SYNC™ 3

When you subscribe to SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link, it can help you locate the best gas prices, find movie listings, get

current traffic alerts, view the current weather map, get accurate ski conditions and see scores to current sports games.

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Traffic on Route	Touch these buttons to identify traffic incidents on your route, near your vehicle's current location or near any of your favorite places, if programmed.	
Traffic Nearby		
Fuel Prices	Touch this button to view fuel prices at stations close to your vehicle's location or on an active navigation route.	
Movie Listings	Touch this button to view nearby movie theaters and their show times, if available.	
Weather	Touch this button to view the nearby weather, current weather, or the five-day forecast for the chosen area.	
	Map	Select to see the weather map, which can show storms, radar information, charts and winds.
	Area	Select to choose from a listing of weather locations.
Sports Info	Touch this button to view scores and schedules from a variety of sports. You can also save up to 10 favorite teams for easier access. The score automatically refreshes when a game is in progress.	
Ski Conditions	Touch this button to view ski conditions for a specific area.	

## SETTINGS



Press the button to enter the settings menu.



Once you select a tile, press the button next to a menu item to view an explanation of the feature or setting.

### Sound

Select this tile to adjust sound the settings.

### Clock

Select this tile to adjust the clock settings.

### Bluetooth

Select this tile to switch Bluetooth on and off and adjust the settings.

### Phone

Select this tile to connect, disconnect, and manage the connected device settings.

### Audio

Select this tile to adjust the audio settings.

## **Driver Assist** (If Equipped)

Select this tile to adjust Driver Assist features like Parking Aids, Lane Keeping System, Pedestrian Detection, and Auto-Start-Stop.

## **Vehicle**

Select this tile to adjust vehicle settings like windows, alarm, lighting, and MyKey settings.

## **FordPass**

Select this tile to adjust the FordPass settings.

## **General**

Select this tile to adjust settings like language, measurement units, or to reset the system.

## **911 Assist** (If Equipped)

Select this tile to switch 911 Assist on and off.

## **Automatic Updates**

Select this tile to adjust the automatic update settings.

## **Mobile Apps**

Select this tile to adjust permissions, enable, disable, and update mobile apps.

## **Display**

Select this tile to adjust display settings like brightness and auto dim.

## **Charge Settings** (If Equipped)

Select this tile to adjust the electric vehicle charge settings.

## **Voice Control**

Select this tile to adjust voice control settings like command confirmations and displayed lists.

## **Navigation** (If Equipped)

Select this tile to adjust navigation settings like map preferences and route guidance.

## **Multi Contour Seats** (If Equipped)

Select this tile to adjust the position and massage function of your multi contour seats.

## **Seats** (If Equipped)

Select this tile to adjust the lumbar function of your seats.

## **Message Center** (If Equipped)

Select this tile to view vehicle messages.

## **Personal Profiles** (If Equipped)

Select this tile to adjust recalled memory features when using personal profiles.

## **Valet Mode** (If Equipped)

Select this tile to enable and disable valet mode.

## **Ambient Lighting** (If Equipped)

Select this tile to change the color or intensity of the interior lighting.

## SYNC™ 3 TROUBLESHOOTING

### Voice Recognition

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
<p>The system does not understand what I am saying.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– You are using the wrong voice commands.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See <b>Using Voice Recognition</b> (page 221).</li> <li>• For a complete list of voice commands, refer to our website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– You are speaking too soon.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wait for the voice prompt before you speak.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<p>The system does not understand the name of a track or artist.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device limitation. Bluetooth does not support voice commands.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Connect your device to a USB port.</li> <li>• If you have an iOS device, press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri to play specific tracks.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– You are using the wrong voice commands.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See <b>Using Voice Recognition</b> (page 221).</li> <li>• For a complete list of voice commands, refer to our website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Say the name of the track or artist exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.</li> </ul> <p>The song or artist name may have some special characters that are not being recognized by the system.</p> </li> <li>– The name contains special characters, for example *, - or +.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rename the files on your device or use the touchscreen to select and play the track.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

# SYNC™ 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system does not understand the name of a contact in the phonebook on my device and calls the wrong contact.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– The name contains special characters, for example *, - or +.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rename the contact on your device or use the touchscreen to select and call the contact.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system does not understand foreign names of contacts in the phonebook on my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. The system applies phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names of contacts in the phonebook on your device. Select the name of the contact on the touchscreen and use the Hear it option to get an idea of how the system expects you to pronounce it.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words does not seem to be very accurate.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device limitation.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The system uses text-to-speech technology and uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## USB and Bluetooth Audio

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device malfunction.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disconnect your device. Switch your device off, reset it and try again.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cable connection issue.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Correctly connect the cable to your device and the vehicle USB port.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incompatible cable.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use the cable recommended by the manufacturer of your device.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

# SYNC™ 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incorrect device settings.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure that your device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.</li> <li>• Check that your device is not set only to charge.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Device lock screen enabled.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unlock your device before connecting it.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system does not recognize my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device limitation.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do not leave your device in your vehicle during very hot or very cold weather conditions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cable connection issue.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Correctly connect the cable to your device and the vehicle USB port.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incompatible cable.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use the cable recommended by the manufacturer of your device.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system does not understand the name of a track or artist.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device limitation. Bluetooth does not support voice commands.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Connect your device to a USB port.</li> <li>• If you have an iOS device, press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri to play specific tracks.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I cannot stream audio from my Bluetooth device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible device.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the compatibility of your device on our website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Device not connected.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pair your device. See <b>Phone</b> (page 238).</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Media player not running.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Start the media player on your device.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system does not recognize the music on my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Missing or incorrect audio file metadata, for example artist, song title, album or genre.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Repair the files on your device.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Corrupt files.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Repair the files on your device.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

# SYNC™ 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Copyright protected files.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use a device that contains files that are not copy-right protected.</li> </ul> </li> <li>- Unsupported file format.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Repair or convert the files to a supported format. See <b>Entertainment</b> (page 228).</li> </ul> </li> <li>- Device indexing required.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Re-index your device. See <b>Settings</b> (page 247).</li> </ul> </li> <li>- Device lock screen enabled.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unlock your device before connecting it.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Sometimes I cannot hear a track playing on my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Device malfunction.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disconnect your device. Switch your device off, reset it and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
When I disconnect my iOS device the audio volume is set to maximum.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Device limitation.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Turn the volume down on your device</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system does not play the tracks on my USB drive in the correct order.	<p>If the system does not play the tracks on your USB device in the correct order, the following information could help:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- If you are selecting USB as the audio source when the system is still indexing, SYNC plays tracks sorted alphabetically by file name in the root directory.</li> <li>- If you are selecting USB as the audio source after the system has finished indexing, SYNC plays all tracks sorted alphabetically by the title in the ID3 tag regardless of where they are located. SYNC uses the file name if the title in the ID3 Tag does not exist.</li> <li>- If you are selecting the option to play all tracks from the browsing menu, SYNC plays all tracks sorted alphabetically by the title in the ID3 tag regardless of where they are located. SYNC uses the file name if the title in the ID3 Tag does not exist.</li> <li>- If you are selecting a track when using the explore device option, SYNC plays tracks sorted alphabetically by file name in the folder you have selected. SYNC then plays all tracks in any subfolders in the folder you have selected.</li> </ul>

## Phone

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
During a call, I can hear excessive background noise.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incorrect cell phone settings.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check and adjust the audio settings on your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Cell phone malfunction.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cell phone microphone muted.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unmute your cell phone microphone.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
During a call, I cannot hear the other person and they cannot hear me.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– System restart required.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Restart the system. Switch the ignition off and open the door. Close the door and lock the vehicle. Wait until the touchscreen is off and any illuminated USB ports are not illuminated. Unlock the vehicle, switch the ignition on and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I cannot download phone-book.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible cell phone.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the compatibility of your cell phone on our website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incorrect cell phone settings.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allow the system to retrieve contacts from your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incorrect system settings.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch automatic phonebook download on. See <b>Settings</b> (page 247).</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cell phone malfunction.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
A message displays suggesting that my phone-book has downloaded but it is empty or it has missing contacts.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incorrect cell phone settings.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allow the system to retrieve contacts from your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual.</li> <li>• Check the location of the missing contacts on your cell phone. If they are stored on the SIM card, move them to the cell phone memory.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incorrect system settings.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch automatic phonebook download on. See <b>Settings</b> (page 247).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>



# SYNC™ 3

<b>Symptom</b>	<b>Possible Cause and Resolution</b>
I cannot connect my cell phone.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Incompatible cell phone.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Check the compatibility of your cell phone on our website.</li></ul></li><li>– Cell phone malfunction.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.</li><li>• Install the latest cell phone firmware.</li><li>• Delete your device from system and delete SYNC from your device and try again.</li><li>• Switch automatic phonebook download off. See <b>Settings</b> (page 247).</li></ul></li></ul>
Text messaging does not work.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– You did not switch on text message notifications.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Switch text message notifications on. See <b>Phone</b> (page 238).</li></ul></li><li>– Incompatible cell phone.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Check the compatibility of your cell phone on our website.</li></ul></li><li>– Cell phone malfunction.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.</li></ul></li></ul>
I cannot hear text messages.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Device message sharing is not enabled.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Check the permissions on your device to ensure text message sharing is enabled.</li></ul></li><li>– Incompatible cell phone.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Check the compatibility of your cell phone on our website.</li></ul></li></ul>

# SYNC™ 3

## Navigation (If Equipped)

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot enter a street name when I am abroad.	– Incorrect entry method. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Enter the street name with the country.</li></ul>
The system does not recognize coordinates.	– You are using the wrong coordinates format. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use the format <code>##.#####</code>, <code>##.#####</code> (for N/S, E/W). Add a minus before coordinates if the direction is West and keep a positive value if the direction is East, for example 12.5412 means East and -12.5412 means West.</li></ul>

# SYNC™ 3

## Apps

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Incompatible device.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You will need an Android device with OS 4.3 or higher or an iOS device with iOS 8.0 or higher. Pair and connect your Android device to find AppLink compatible apps. Connect your iOS device to a USB port or pair and connect using Bluetooth.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I have a compatible device and it is correctly connected but the system still cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- AppLink compatible apps not installed on your device.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Download and install the latest version of the app.</li> </ul> </li> <li>- AppLink compatible apps not running on your device.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Start the apps to allow the system to find them and make sure you sign in to any apps if required.</li> </ul> </li> <li>- Incorrect app settings.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check and adjust the app settings on your device and allow SYNC to access the app if required.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I have a compatible device, it is correctly connected and my apps are running but the system still cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Apps failed to fully close.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Restart the apps and try again.</li> <li>• If you have an Android device with apps that have an exit or quit option, use this and then restart the apps. Alternatively, use the force stop option in the settings menu on your device.</li> <li>• If you have an iOS device with iOS 7.0 or higher, tap the home button on your device twice and then swipe the app upward to close it.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I have an Android device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- An issue on some older versions of the Android operating system could result in apps not being found.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch Bluetooth off and on again to force the system to reconnect to your device.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

# SYNC™ 3

<b>Symptom</b>	<b>Possible Cause and Resolution</b>
I have an iOS device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	– Cable connection issue. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Disconnect the cable from your device, wait for a moment and then connect it again to force the system to reconnect to your device.</li></ul>
I have an Android device running a media app which the system has found but I cannot hear the sound or the sound is very quiet.	– Device volume is low. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Turn the volume up on your device.</li></ul>
I have an Android device running a number of compatible apps but the system cannot find all of them.	– Device limitation. Some Android devices have a limited number of Bluetooth ports that apps can use to connect. If you have more apps running on your device than the number of available Bluetooth ports, the system cannot find all of them. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Close some of the apps to allow the system to find those that you want to use.</li></ul>

## Wi-Fi Connectivity

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect to a Wi-Fi network.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Password error.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter the correct network password.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Weak network signal.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Multiple access points in range with the same SSID.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use a unique name for your SSID,. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The Wi-Fi connection disconnects after successful connection.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Weak network signal.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I am close to a Wi-Fi hotspot but the network signal strength is weak.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Obstructed network signal.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi hotspot.</li> <li>• If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi hotspot or open the windows that are facing the hotspot.</li> <li>• If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the hotspot.</li> <li>• If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I cannot see a network in the list of available networks that I expect to see.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Hidden network.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make the network visible and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

# SYNC™ 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot see SYNC when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– System limitation.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SYNC does not provide a Wi-Fi hotspot at this time.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Software downloads take too long.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Weak network signal                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Wi-Fi hotspot in high demand or has a slow Internet connection.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use a more reliable Wi-Fi hotspot.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent but the software does not update.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– No software update available.</li> <li>– Wi-Fi network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Test the connection using another device. If the network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions, contact the network service provider.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## Personal Profiles (If Equipped)

Symptom	Possible Cause and Solution
I cannot create a profile.	You have not set up Personal Profiles.
	You entered an invalid profile.
	You did not select a memory button when prompted.
	You did not have the ignition on or in park (P), or you shifted out park (P) when creating a profile.
	Personal Profiles has been switched off.
I cannot link a remote control.	You did not select the lock button on the remote control.
	The remote control selected was already associated with another profile and the system declined to overwrite.
	The system performed a profile recall when linking a remote control.
	You did not have the ignition on or in park (P), or you shifted out park (P) when creating a profile.

## SYNC™ 3

<b>Symptom</b>	<b>Possible Cause and Solution</b>
	You are using the old linking method.
My personalized settings do not save.	Personal Profiles does not support your unsaved settings.
	A different personal profile is active.
	Another user changed the settings for the wrong personal profile.
My profile will not recall.	You did not create a personal profile.
	Personal Profiles is turned off.
	The profile you requested is already active.
	You did not link the memory button you are using to a profile.
	You did not link the remote control you are using to a profile.
	You are using the wrong remote control.
	You are pressing a button other than the unlock or remote start on a linked remote control.
	You deleted the personal profile.
My preset positions recall, but my profile does not.	You switched the personal profiles off.
My profile recalls but my preset positions do not.	The vehicle is in motion.
	The preset positions are the same as the guest or previously active profile.
I lost a remote control.	Unlink and relink your remote control in the Personal Profiles menu. You may need to see your authorized dealer.
I lost all profiles.	You erased and reprogrammed the remote controls. This could happen if you let a dealership add a new remote control to replace a lost one.
	Someone performed a master reset without your knowledge.

## Resetting the System

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek up and the audio unit power buttons until the screen goes black.
2. Wait three minutes to allow the system to complete the reset.
3. Press the audio unit power button to switch the system on.

**Note:** *You can reset the system to restore functionality that has stopped working. The system reset is designed to restore functionality and not delete any data that you have stored.*

## Additional Information and Assistance

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer or refer to our website.



## Accessories

---

For a complete listing of Ford GT Accessories and Ford GT Licensed Products, contact the Ford GT Concierge at 1-800-210-5795. The Ford GT Concierge has the latest information on the offerings available.

# Scheduled Maintenance

---

## GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

### Why Maintain Your Vehicle?

Carefully following the maintenance schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it. Keep all receipts for completed maintenance with your vehicle and record the maintenance in the pages that follow in this section.

We have established regular maintenance intervals for your vehicle based upon rigorous testing. It is important that you have your vehicle serviced at the proper times. Remember that time is just as important as miles driven. These intervals are based on both time and distance driven. Since cars like the Ford GT do not get driven daily in most cases, your maintenance intervals may be more based on time than distance driven.

It is your responsibility to have all scheduled maintenance performed and to make sure that the materials used meet the specifications identified in this owner's manual. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 207).

Failure to perform scheduled maintenance invalidates warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance.

### Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Certified Ford GT Service Dealership?

#### Factory-Trained Technicians

Service technicians participate in extensive factory-sponsored certification training to help them become experts on the operation of your Ford GT.

### Genuine Ford and Motorcraft™ Replacement Parts

Certified Ford GT Service Dealerships stock the Ford and Motorcraft parts needed to maintain your Ford GT. These parts meet or exceed our specifications. Parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide 24-month or unlimited mile (kilometer) parts and labor limited warranty.

If you do not use Ford authorized parts they may not meet our specifications and depending on the part, it could affect emissions compliance.

### Convenience

The Ford GT Concierge will be happy to assist you in scheduling your maintenance visits and will work with your Certified Ford GT Service Dealership to make these arrangements.

### Road Course Maintenance

If your Ford GT is subjected to dedicated road course use, we recommend additional maintenance. See **Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance** (page 266).

### Protecting Your Investment

#### Additives and Chemicals

This owner's manual and the Ford Workshop Manual list the recommended additives and chemicals for your vehicle. We do not recommend using chemicals or additives not approved by us as part of your vehicle's normal maintenance. Please consult your warranty information.

# Scheduled Maintenance

## Oils and Fluids

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic and, by itself, does not necessarily indicate a concern or that the fluid needs to be changed. However, a qualified expert, such as the factory-trained technicians at your

dealership, should inspect discolored fluids that also show signs of overheating or foreign material contamination immediately.

Make sure to change your vehicle's oils and fluids at the specified intervals or in conjunction with a repair.

## NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

### Normal Maintenance Intervals

<b>Annually or Every 5,000 mi (8,000 km)</b>
Change the oil and filter.
Inspect the tires and check the tire pressures.
Inspect the brake pads, rotors, hoses, brake cooling duct hoses and check the parking brake function. Check the brake fluid level.
Inspect the engine cooling system strength and hoses. Check the coolant level.
Inspect the exhaust system and heat shields.
Inspect the accessory drive belts.
Inspect the steering linkage, ball joints, suspension and the tie-rod ends.
Inspect the wiper blades. Check the washer fluid level.
Inspect the hinges and latches. Lubricate if needed.
Inspect the vehicle battery and the state of charge.
Check the hydraulic fluid level.
Check the operation of all the lights.
Check the operation of warning indicators inside the instrument cluster.
Check for any fluid leaks.

# Scheduled Maintenance

<b>Other Maintenance Items<sup>2</sup></b>	
Every 3 Years	Change the brake fluid. <sup>1</sup>
Every 2 Years or 10,000 mi (16,000 km)	Replace the cabin air filter.
Every 3 Years or 10,000 mi (16,000 km)	Replace the engine air filters.
Every 6 Years or 30,000 mi (48,000 km)	Change the transmission gear fluid. Change the transmission wet clutch oil.
Every 45,000 mi (72,000 km)	Replace the spark plugs.
Every 10 Years or 60,000 mi (100,000 km)	Change the hydraulic fluid and filter.
60,000 mi (100,000 km)	Change the orange-colored engine coolant. <sup>3</sup>
100,000 mi (160,000 km)	Replace the front and the rear accessory drive belts.
200,000 mi (320,000 km)	Change the yellow-colored engine coolant. <sup>4</sup>
Every 24 Years	Replace the Hydraulic Accumulator Bottle.

<sup>1</sup> Perform this maintenance item every 3 years. Do not exceed the designated time for the interval.

<sup>2</sup> Do not exceed the designated distance or mileage for the interval.

<sup>3</sup> Initial replacement at six years or 60,000 mi (100,000 km), then every three years or 30,000 mi (48,000 km).

<sup>4</sup> Initial replacement at 10 years or 200,000 mi (320,000 km), then every five years or 99,000 mi (160,000 km).

# Scheduled Maintenance

---

## SPECIAL OPERATING CONDITIONS SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

### Hot Climate Oil Change Intervals

Vehicles operating in the Middle East, North Africa, Sub-Saharan Africa or locations with similar climates using an American Petroleum Institute (API) Certified for Gasoline Engines (Certification mark) oil of SM or SN quality, the normal oil change interval is 2,500 mi (4,000 km).

### Engine Air Filter and Cabin Air Filter Replacement

The life of the engine air filter and cabin air filter is dependent on exposure to dusty and dirty conditions. Vehicles operated in these conditions require frequent inspection and replacement of the engine air filter and cabin air filter.

### Operating at High Speeds and Track Days

Your vehicle is capable of sustained high speeds and track day driving. Your GT has electronic controls to reduce power and limit the RPM to reduce powertrain temperatures if operating temperatures are exceeded.

### Before Operating Your Vehicle at High Speeds:

- Verify your tires have the correct pressures. See **Technical Specifications** (page 206).
- Inspect wheels and tires for wear and damage. Replace any damaged wheels and tires.
- Check and set lug nut torque. See **Technical Specifications** (page 206).
- Verify fluid levels for oil, coolant, brake, and hydraulic fluid. See **Maintenance** (page 157).
- Change the oil and filter prior to use on the track.

### After Operating Your vehicle at High Speeds and Track Day Driving, Do the Following:

- Set tire pressures to specification.
- Check and set lug nut torque. See **Technical Specifications** (page 206).
- Check all fluid levels.
- If you drive your car for an extended period of time at high speed or on the track for an extended time, change the oil and filter.

## SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE RECORD

After the scheduled maintenance services are performed, record the Repair Order #, Distance and Engine Hours in the boxes provided.

# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	



# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

---

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Appendices

## END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

### VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

**IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).**

**GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE:** This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

## Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.



# Appendices

---

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

# Appendices

---

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

## **UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:**

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

## **INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:**

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

**EXPORT RESTRICTIONS:** You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

# Appendices

---

**TRADEMARKS:** This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

**PRODUCT SUPPORT:** Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

**No Liability for Certain Damages:** EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

## **SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:**

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

## General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a

# Appendices

---

substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following: (a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service. (d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

# Appendices

---

## Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL

CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

## Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

# Appendices

---

## **Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver**

**(a) Application.** This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

**(b) Notice of Dispute.** In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

**(c) Small claims court.** You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

**(d) Binding arbitration.** If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up

the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

**(e) Class action waiver.** Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

**(f) Arbitration procedure.** Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see [adr.org](http://adr.org) or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

## Appendices

may award the same damages to You individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to You individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy Your individual claim.

### **(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.**

- i. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all

filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

**(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year.** To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

**(i) Severability.** If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

### **Telenav Software End User License Agreement**

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

# Appendices

---

## 1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

- (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;
- (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;
- (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;
- (d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;
- (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

## 2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

## 3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

### 3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)**



# Appendices

---

distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

- i. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,
- ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or
- iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

## 4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others

is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

## 5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY

# Appendices

---

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

## **6. Arbitration and Governing Law**

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit

to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

## **7. Assignment**

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

## **8. Miscellaneous**

### **8.1**

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

### **8.2**

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

# Appendices

---

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

## 8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

## 8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

## 8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

## 8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

## 9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors::

## 9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

# Appendices

---

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

## **9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd**

The data (“Data”) is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd (“NAV2”) and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

### **Terms and Conditions**

**Permitted Use.** You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

**Restrictions.** Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

**Warning.** The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

**No Warranty.** This Data is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

**Disclaimer of Warranty:** TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

# Appendices

---

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

**Disclaimer of Liability:** TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

**Export Control.** You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such

export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

**Entire Agreement.** These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

**Governing Law.** The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

**Government End Users.** If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

# Appendices

## NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/  
SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/  
SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425  
West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois  
60606

This Data is a commercial item as  
defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to  
these End-User Terms under which this  
Data was provided.

© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

### I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

“HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.”

“©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.”

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors (“Third Party Data”), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada (“NRCan”):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

# Appendices

---

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data,

either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.

End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

# Appendices

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía (“INEGI”):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: “Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

## III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory Notice

Argentina	IGN “INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO”
Ecuador	“INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011” “source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®”
Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	“Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

## IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country Notice

Jordan “© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre”. The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client’s license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE’s database for the country of Jordan (“Jordan Data”) for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, “Enterprise Applications” shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.



# Appendices

---

## V. Europe Territory

### A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l'Équipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic

is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landvermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

# Appendices

Austria	“© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen”	Spain	“Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG”
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	“© EuroGeographics”	Sweden	“Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden.”
France	“source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®”	Switzerland	“Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.
Germany	“Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen”	E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client’s compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.	
Great Britain	“Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010”	VI. Australia Territory	
Greece	“Copyright Geomatics Ltd.”	A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:	
Hungary	“Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd.”	Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.pasma.com.au).	
Italy	“La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana.”		
Norway	“Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority”		
Portugal	“Source: IgeoE – Portugal”		

# Appendices

---

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelomatics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: “Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors.”

## **AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure**

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION “UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER” INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER’S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR

DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER’S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTEE THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER’S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY. END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER

# Appendices

---

MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

## **VII. China Territory**

### ***Personal Use Only***

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i)

view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

### ***Restrictions***

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

### ***Limited Warranty***

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

# Appendices

## ***rig*Customer Remedies**

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

### ***No Other Warranty:***

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

### ***Limited Liability:***

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR

FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

### ***Export Control***

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

### ***IP Protection***

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

### ***Entire Agreement***

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

# Appendices

---

## **Governing Law.**

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

## **Gracenote® Copyright**

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

## **Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)**

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers

("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide,

# Appendices

including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at [www.gracenote.com](http://www.gracenote.com) for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,

IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

## **Radio Frequency Statement**

FCC ID: ACJ-SYNCG3-L

IC: 216B-SYNCG3-L

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1)** This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2)** this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

# Appendices

## Taiwan Territory

Note: In accordance with the management approach of low-power radio wave radiation motors:

Article 12: For approved and certified low-power radiation motor models, companies, firms or users must not alter the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

Article 14: The usage of low-power radio-frequency motors must not affect aviation safety and interfere with legal telecommunications. Should interference be detected, immediately stop using the device and only resume usage after ensuring that there is no longer any interference. For the legal telecommunication and wireless telecommunication of the telco, the low-power radio frequency motor must be able to tolerate legal limits of interference from telecommunication, industrial, scientific and radio wave equipment.

## SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
<a href="http://www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/">www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/</a>

### 1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
<a href="http://www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/">www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/</a>

### 2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

### 3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

### 4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorised drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.



# Appendices

## 5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavours to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

## 6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the “**Suppliers**”)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that the neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or

completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

## 7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

## DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Your vehicle could have components that transmit and receive radio waves and are therefore subject to government regulation.

These components must accept any interference received, including interference that could cause undesired operation. For certification labels and declarations of conformity, visit [www.wirelessconformity.ford.com](http://www.wirelessconformity.ford.com).

## DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

### Radio Frequency Statement

SYNC Version	FCC Identification Number	IC Identification Number
3.0	ACJ-SYNCG3-L	216B-SYNCG3-L
3.1	ACJ-FA-170-BCARHS	216B-FA170BCARHS
3.2	ACJ-FG-185-SG32MH	216B-FG185SG32MH

# Appendices

---



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

These devices comply with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. The device does not cause harmful interference.
2. The device accepts any interference received, including interference that could cause undesired operation.



# Index

## 9

911 Assist.....43

## A

A/C

See: Climate Control.....84

About This Manual.....5

Ford GT Concierge Phone Numbers.....5

ABS

See: Brakes.....110

ABS driving hints

See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock

Brakes.....111

Accessories.....262

Accessories

See: Replacement Parts

Recommendation.....11

Adjustable Pedals.....60

Adjusting the Headlamps.....170

Headlamp Aim Target.....170

Adjusting the Pedals.....60

Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....56

Airbag Disposal.....42

Air Conditioning

See: Climate Control.....84

Air Filter

See: Changing the Engine Air Filter.....171

Alarm

See: Anti-Theft Alarm.....55

Anti-Theft Alarm.....55

Arming the Alarm.....55

Disarming the Alarm.....55

Appendices.....277

Apps.....245

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link.....246

Using Apps on an Android Device.....246

Using Apps on an iOS Device.....245

Using Mobile Navigation on an Android

Device.....246

At a Glance.....16

Audible Warnings and Indicators.....73

Headlamps On Warning Chime.....73

Keyless Warning Alert.....73

Audio Control.....57

Seek, Next or Previous.....57

Audio System.....218

Audio Unit.....218

Autolamps.....63

Automatic Climate Control.....84

Directing the Airflow.....84

Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....84

Setting the Temperature.....84

Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....84

Switching Recirculated Air On and

Off.....84

Switching the Air Conditioning On and

Off.....84

Automatic Transmission.....105

Brake-Shift Interlock.....108

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or

Snow.....109

Performance Shift Indicator.....107

SelectShift™ Automatic

Transmission.....106

Understanding the Positions of Your

Automatic Transmission.....105

Automatic Transmission Fluid

Check.....165

Auxiliary Power Points.....89

DC Power Point.....89

Location.....89

## B

Battery

See: Changing the 12V Battery.....167

Body Styling Kits.....182

Bonnet Lock

See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....157

Booster Seats.....24

Types of Booster Seats.....25

Brake Fluid Check.....166

Brakes.....110

General Information.....110

Breaking-In.....133

Cold Engine Operation.....133

Hot Engine Shut down.....133

## C

Cabin Air Filter.....86

Capacities and Specifications.....212

Air Conditioning System.....212

Engine Coolant.....213

# Index

Engine Oil.....	214	Cleaning the Interior.....	178
Fuel Tank.....	215	Cleaning Alcantara Microfiber Cloth.....	178
Grease.....	215	Cleaning the Wheels.....	180
Hydraulic Brake System.....	216	Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades.....	178
Hydraulic Power Steering, Active Suspension, and Active Aero System.....	216	Climate Control.....	84
Locks.....	215	Coolant Check See: Engine Coolant Check.....	161
Transmission Gear.....	212	Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator.....	41
Transmission Wet Clutch.....	213	Cruise Control.....	57
Washer Reservoir.....	217	Principle of Operation.....	120
Car Wash See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	175	Cruise control See: Using Cruise Control.....	120
Catalytic Converter.....	102	Cup Holders.....	90
On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II).....	103	Customer Assistance.....	139
Readiness for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) Testing.....	104		
Changing a Bulb.....	171	<b>D</b>	
LED Lamps.....	171	Data Recording.....	7
Changing a Fuse.....	155	Comfort, Convenience and Entertainment Data.....	9
Fuses.....	155	Event Data.....	8
Changing a Road Wheel.....	205	Service Data.....	7
Important Information for Lifting or Jacking.....	205	Services That Third Parties Provide.....	9
Changing the 12V Battery.....	167	Services That We Provide.....	9
Battery Charger and Maintainer.....	168	Vehicles With a Modem.....	9
Battery Management System.....	169	Vehicles With an Emergency Call System.....	10
Changing the Engine Air Filter.....	171	Vehicles With SYNC.....	10
Changing the Wiper Blades.....	170	Daytime Running Lamps.....	63
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	169	Declaration of Conformity.....	302
Child Restraint and Seatbelt Maintenance.....	33	Declaration of Conformity - Vehicles With: SYNC 3.....	302
Child Restraint Positioning.....	26	Radio Frequency Statement.....	302
Child Safety.....	19	Direction Indicators.....	64
General Information.....	19	Doors and Locks.....	50
Cleaning Leather Seats.....	180	Drive Mode Control.....	58
Cleaning Products.....	175	Active Aerodynamics.....	125
Materials.....	175	Damper Comfort Mode.....	125
Cleaning the Engine.....	177	Drive Mode Selection.....	121
Cleaning the Exterior.....	175	Front Lift.....	125
Exterior Plastic Parts.....	177	Driver and Passenger Airbags.....	37
Matte Paint Finish.....	176	Children and Airbags.....	37
Raising the Rear Wing.....	177	Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment.....	37
Standard Paint Finish.....	176	Driver and Passenger Knee Airbags.....	41
Under Hood.....	177	Driving Aids.....	121
Cleaning the Instrument Panel and Instrument Cluster Lens.....	179		

# Index

Driving at High Speed.....	205
Tire Pressure - Speeds Greater Than .....	205
Driving Hints.....	133
Driving Through Water.....	133
DRL	
See: Daytime Running Lamps.....	63
<b>E</b>	
Electric Parking Brake.....	111
Applying the Electric Parking brake.....	111
Battery With No Charge.....	113
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	112
Emergency Call Limitations.....	44
Emergency Call Requirements.....	43
Emergency Door Release.....	53
Emission Law.....	101
Noise Emissions Warranty, Prohibited Tampering Acts and Maintenance.....	102
Tampering With a Noise Control System.....	101
End User License Agreement.....	277
VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA) .....	277
Engine Coolant Check.....	161
Adding Coolant.....	162
Coolant Change.....	163
Engine Coolant Temperature Management.....	165
Fail-Safe Cooling.....	163
Recycled Coolant.....	163
Severe Climates.....	163
Engine Emission Control.....	101
Engine Immobilizer	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	54
Engine Oil Check.....	160
Adding Engine Oil.....	160
Engine Oil Dipstick.....	160
Engine Specifications.....	207
Entertainment.....	228
AM/FM Radio.....	229
Apps.....	237
Bluetooth Stereo or USB.....	236
CD (If equipped).....	235
HD Radio™ Information (If Available).....	232
SiriusXM® Satellite Radio (If Activated).....	229
Sources.....	228
Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information.....	237
USB Ports.....	237
Environment.....	15
EPB	
See: Electric Parking Brake.....	111
Event Data Recording	
See: Data Recording.....	7
Exterior Mirrors.....	66
Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors.....	66
Power Exterior Mirrors.....	66
<b>F</b>	
Fastening the Seatbelts.....	29
Seatbelt Locking Modes.....	30
Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy.....	30
Using the Sliding Clip.....	29
Flat Tire	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	205
Flat Tire Inflation	
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	183
Floor Mats.....	134
Foot Pedals	
See: Adjusting the Pedals.....	60
Ford Performance.....	13
Front Passenger Sensing System.....	38
Fuel and Refueling.....	95
Fuel Consumption.....	99
Calculating Fuel Economy.....	100
Filling the Fuel Tank.....	100
Fuel Filler Funnel Location.....	96
Fuel Filter.....	167
Fuel Quality.....	96
Choosing the Right Fuel.....	96
Fuel Shutoff.....	135
Fuses.....	145
Fuse Specification Chart.....	145
Front Power Distribution Box.....	145
Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel.....	151
Rear Power Distribution Box 1.....	147
Rear Power Distribution Box 2.....	150

# Index

<b>G</b>	
Gauges.....	67
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	69
Engine Oil Pressure Gauge.....	69
Engine Oil Temperature Gauge.....	69
Fuel Gauge.....	68
Gauge Mode.....	69
Information Display.....	67
Trip Computer.....	68
Gearbox	
See: Transmission.....	105
General Information on Radio	
Frequencies.....	45
Intelligent Access.....	45
General Maintenance Information.....	263
Protecting Your Investment.....	263
Road Course Maintenance.....	263
Why Maintain Your Vehicle?.....	263
Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Certified Ford GT Service Dealership?.....	263
Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and Canada.....	142
Getting the Services You Need.....	139
Away From Home.....	139
Global Opening.....	65
Remote Control Front Windows.....	66
<b>H</b>	
Hazard Flashers.....	135
Headlamp Adjusting	
See: Adjusting the Headlamps.....	170
Heating	
See: Climate Control.....	84
Hill Start Assist.....	113
Using Hill Start Assist.....	113
Hints on Controlling the Interior	
Climate.....	85
Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather.....	85
Defogging the Windshield in Cold Weather.....	86
General Hints.....	85
Quickly Cooling the Interior.....	85
Quickly Heating the Interior.....	85
Recommended Settings for Cooling.....	85
Recommended Settings for Heating.....	85
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	111
Hood Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	157
Horn.....	58
<b>I</b>	
In California (U.S. Only).....	140
Information Display Control.....	58
Information Displays.....	74
General Information.....	74
Information Messages.....	77
AdvanceTrac™.....	77
Alarm.....	77
Battery and Charging System.....	78
Doors and Locks.....	78
Engine.....	78
Fuel.....	79
Hill Start Assist.....	79
Hydraulic System.....	79
Keys and Intelligent Access.....	80
Maintenance.....	80
Park Brake.....	81
Remote Start.....	81
Starting System.....	82
Steering System.....	82
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	82
Transmission.....	83
Installing Child Restraints.....	20
Child Seats.....	20
Using Lap and Shoulder Belts.....	21
Using Tether Straps.....	23
Instrument Cluster.....	67
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	63
Instrument Panel.....	16
Interior Lamps.....	64
Interior Mirror.....	66
Introduction.....	5
<b>J</b>	
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	136
Connecting the Jumper Cables.....	136
Jump Starting.....	137
Preparing Your Vehicle.....	136
Removing the Jumper Cables.....	137

# Index

## K

Keyless Starting.....	91
Ignition Modes.....	91
Keys and Remote Controls.....	45

## L

Launch Control.....	174
Lighting Control.....	58
High Beams.....	62
Performance Shift Indicator.....	59
Lighting.....	62
General Information.....	62
Load Carrying.....	127
Load Limit.....	127
Vehicle Loading - with and without a Trailer.....	127
Locking and Unlocking.....	50
Activating Intelligent Access .....	50
Autolock.....	51
Battery Saver.....	52
Illuminated Entry.....	52
Illuminated Exit.....	52
Power Door Locks.....	50
Remote Control.....	50
Smart Unlocks for Intelligent Access Keys.....	51
Lug Nuts See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	205

## M

Maintenance.....	157
General Information.....	157
Manual Seats.....	87
Map Pockets.....	90
Message Center See: Information Displays.....	74
Mirrors See: Windows and Mirrors.....	65
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	12
Motorcraft Parts.....	208

## N

Navigation.....	240
Changing the Format of the Map.....	241

cityseeker.....	243
Michelin Travel Guide.....	244
Navigation Map Accuracy and Updates.....	245
Route Guidance.....	242
Setting a Destination.....	240
SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link.....	244
Zoom.....	241
Normal Scheduled Maintenance.....	264
Normal Maintenance Intervals.....	264

## O

Oil Check See: Engine Oil Check.....	160
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	157
Closing the Front Hood.....	158
Closing the Rear Hatch.....	158
Opening the Front Hood.....	157
Opening the Rear Hatch.....	158
Opening the Doors.....	52
Opening the Doors from Inside.....	52
Ordering Additional Owner's Literature.....	143

## P

Parking Aids.....	118
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	54
SecuriLock.....	54
PATS See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	54
Perchlorate.....	10
Personal Safety System™.....	35
How Does the Personal Safety System Work?.....	35
Phone.....	238
Android Auto.....	239
Apple CarPlay.....	239
Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time.....	238
Text Messaging.....	239
Using Your Cell Phone.....	238
Post-Crash Alert System.....	137
Power Door Locks See: Locking and Unlocking.....	50
Power Steering Fluid Check.....	166



# Index

Power Windows.....	65	Running Out of Fuel.....	96
Accessory Delay.....	65	Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container.....	97
Bounce-Back.....	65	Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....	97
One-Touch Down.....	65		
One-Touch Up.....	65	<b>S</b>	
Protecting the Environment.....	15	Safety Precautions.....	95
Puncture		Scheduled Maintenance Record.....	266
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	205	Scheduled Maintenance.....	263
<b>R</b>		Seatbelt Extensions.....	34
Rear Under Hatch Storage.....	127	Seatbelt Reminder.....	32
Rear View Camera.....	118	Belt-Minder™.....	32
Using the Rear View Camera System.....	118	Seatbelts.....	28
Rear View Camera		Principle of Operation.....	28
See: Rear View Camera.....	118	Seatbelt Warning Lamp and Indicator	
Refueling.....	98	Chime.....	31
System Warnings.....	99	Conditions of operation.....	31
Remote Control.....	46	Seats.....	87
Intelligent Access Key.....	46	Security.....	54
Locating Your Vehicle.....	49	Settings.....	247
Remote Control Information		911 Assist.....	248
Messages.....	49	Ambient Lighting.....	248
Replacing the Battery.....	47	Audio.....	247
Sounding a Panic Alarm.....	49	Automatic Updates.....	248
Using the Key Blade.....	46	Bluetooth.....	247
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	180	Charge Settings.....	248
Replacement Parts		Clock.....	247
Recommendation.....	11	Display.....	248
Collision Repairs.....	11	Driver Assist.....	248
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical		FordPass.....	248
Repairs.....	11	General.....	248
Warranty on Replacement Parts.....	11	Message Center.....	248
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote		Mobile Apps.....	248
Control.....	49	Multi Contour Seats.....	248
Reporting Safety Defects (Canada		Navigation.....	248
Only).....	144	Personal Profiles.....	248
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S.		Phone.....	247
Only).....	143	Seats.....	248
Roadside Assistance.....	135	Sound.....	247
Vehicles Sold in the United States: Getting		Valet Mode.....	248
Roadside Assistance.....	135	Vehicle.....	248
Vehicles Sold in the United States: Using		Voice Control.....	248
Roadside Assistance.....	135	Side Airbags.....	40
Roadside Emergencies.....	135	Sitting in the Correct Position.....	87
Running-In		Snow Chains	
See: Breaking-In.....	133	See: Using Snow Chains.....	201

# Index

Spare Wheel	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	205
Special Notices.....	11
Additional Warranty Information.....	11
Certified Ford GT Service Dealer.....	12
New Vehicle Limited Warranty.....	11
On Board Diagnostics Data Link	
Connector.....	12
Special Instructions.....	12
Special Operating Conditions Scheduled	
Maintenance.....	266
Engine Air Filter and Cabin Air Filter	
Replacement.....	266
Hot Climate Oil Change Intervals.....	266
Operating at High Speeds and Track	
Days.....	266
Speed Control	
See: Cruise Control.....	120
Stability Control.....	115
Principle of Operation.....	115
Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	91
General Information.....	91
Starting the Engine.....	92
Failure to Start.....	93
Fast Restart.....	93
Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes.....	94
Important Ventilating Information.....	94
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is	
Moving.....	93
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is	
Stationary.....	93
Steering.....	121
Steering Wheel Lock.....	92
Steering Wheel.....	56
Storage Compartments.....	90
Supplementary Restraints System.....	36
Principle of Operation.....	36
Symbols Glossary.....	5
SYNC™ 3.....	219
General Information.....	219
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting.....	249
Additional Information and	
Assistance.....	261
Apps.....	256
Navigation.....	255
Personal Profiles.....	259
Phone.....	253
Resetting the System.....	261
USB and Bluetooth Audio.....	250
Voice Recognition.....	249
Wi-Fi Connectivity.....	258
<b>T</b>	
Technical Specifications	
See: Capacities and Specifications.....	207
The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto	
Line Program (U.S. Only).....	140
Tire Care.....	189
Glossary of Tire Terminology.....	191
Information About Uniform Tire Quality	
Grading.....	189
Information Contained on the Tire	
Sidewall.....	192
Temperature A B C.....	190
Traction AA A B C.....	190
Treadwear.....	190
Tire Inflation When Punctured	
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	183
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	202
Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure	
Monitoring System.....	203
Understanding Your Tire Pressure	
Monitoring System.....	203
Tire Repair Kit	
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	183
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	183
First Stage: Inflating the Tire with Sealing	
Compound and Air.....	185
General Information.....	184
Second Stage: Checking Tire	
Pressure.....	187
Tips for Use of the Kit.....	184
What to Do After the Tire has Been	
Sealed.....	187
What to do When a Tire Is Punctured.....	185
Tires	
See: Wheels and Tires.....	183
Towing a Trailer.....	132
Towing Points.....	138
Installing the Recovery Hook.....	138
Recovery Hook Location.....	138
Towing the Vehicle on Four	
Wheels.....	132
Emergency Towing.....	132
Towing.....	132

# Index

Track Use.....	172	Cooling system.....	182
Operating at High Speeds and on Track		Engine.....	181
Days.....	172	Fuel system.....	181
Road Course Vehicle Preparation.....	173	General.....	181
Transmission Code Designation.....	211	Miscellaneous.....	182
Transmission.....	105	Removing Vehicle From Storage.....	182
Transporting the Vehicle.....	137	Tires.....	182
Getting the Transmission in Neutral.....	138	Ventilation	
<b>U</b>		See: Climate Control.....	84
Under Hood Overview.....	159	VIN	
Under Seat Storage.....	90	See: Vehicle Identification Number.....	210
Unique Features.....	17	Voice Control.....	57
USB Port.....	218	<b>W</b>	
Using Cruise Control.....	120	Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	69
Switching Cruise Control Off.....	120	Anti-Lock Braking System.....	69
Switching Cruise Control On.....	120	Battery.....	70
Using Launch Control.....	174	Brake System.....	70
Using Snow Chains.....	201	Carbon Ceramic Brakes.....	70
Using Stability Control.....	116	Cruise Control.....	70
AdvanceTrac™ Electronic Stability Control		Damper Comfort Mode.....	70
.....	116	Direction Indicator.....	70
Stability Control.....	117	Door Ajar.....	70
Using Summer Tires.....	201	Electric Park Brake.....	70
Using Voice Recognition.....	221	Engine Coolant Temperature.....	70
Audio Voice Commands.....	222	Engine Oil.....	70
Climate Voice Commands.....	223	Fasten Seatbelt.....	71
Mobile App Voice Commands.....	226	Front Airbag.....	71
Navigation Voice Commands.....	225	Front Lift Mode Active.....	71
Phone Voice Commands.....	223	Frost Warning Lamp.....	71
SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link Voice		Hatch Ajar.....	71
Commands.....	226	High Beam.....	71
Voice Settings Commands.....	227	Hood Ajar.....	71
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration		Hydraulic System Fault.....	71
Program (Canada Only).....	141	Launch Control.....	71
<b>V</b>		Low Beam Malfunction Warning Lamp.....	71
Vehicle Care.....	175	Low Fuel Level.....	71
General Information.....	175	Low Tire Pressure Warning.....	71
Vehicle Certification Label.....	211	Parking Lamps.....	72
Vehicle Dimensions.....	209	Powertrain Fault.....	72
Vehicle Identification Number.....	210	Rear Fog Lamp.....	72
Vehicle Storage.....	181	Ride Height System Fault.....	72
Battery.....	182	Service Engine Soon.....	72
Body.....	181	Stability Control.....	72
Brakes.....	182	Stability Control Off.....	72
		Transmission Fault.....	72
		Washer Fluid Check.....	167

# Index

---

Washers	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	175
See: Wipers and Washers.....	61
Waxing.....	177
What Is 911 Assist.....	43
What Is Launch Control.....	174
Wheel Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	205
Wheels and Tires.....	183
Technical Specifications.....	206
Windows and Mirrors.....	65
Windshield Washers.....	61
Windshield Wipers.....	61
Wiper and Washer Control.....	58
Wiper Blades	
See: Checking the Wiper Blades.....	169
Wipers and Washers.....	61